Page 2

ne Tools	Document 🖺 🖶 🖂 Q, 🗇 🕢 Z / 181 🗁 🕂 124% 🔹 📙 🚰 🐺	
		Comment
		🛴 Fill & Sign
	Section 1 – Safety, hazards & risks	
	1. PURPOSE OF THE WIRING RULES	
	Refer to <u>clause</u> - Scope:	
	The 2007 edition of the Wiring rules AS/NZS 3000 establishes the safety requirements for the	
	•	
	of electrical installations,	Þ
	including the selection and installation of equipment forming part of such electrical installations.	
	The requirements are intended to protect -	
	•	
	•	
		Convert and edit PDF with Acrobat Pro DC Start Free Trial

# 1.1 SCOPE

This Standard sets out requirements for the design, construction and verification of electrical installations, including the selection and installation of electrical equipment forming part of such electrical installations.

These requirements are intended to protect persons, livestock, and property from electric shock, fire and physical injury hazards that may arise from an electrical installation that is used with reasonable care and with due regard to the intended purpose of the electrical installation.

### 2.APPLICATION OF THE RULES

Refer to **clause** - Application: The principal application of the Wiring Rules relates to electrical installations in -

Electrical work is to comply with sections 2-8 of the AS/NZS3000 standard, and any other relevant standard or code of practice that may pertain to any particular installation.

The principal application of this Standard is to electrical installations in all

types of premises and land used by electricity consumers.

## (1.2 APPLICATION)

However, the Standard may also be referenced or applied through legislative or other requirements relating to the effect of electrical installations in matters such as the following:

Refer to **clause** – Definitions (1. 4 **DEFINITIONS**)

### **4.FUNDAMENTAL PRICIPLES**

AS/NZS 3000 establishes a set of fundamental principles in order to provide protectionfor safety. Refer to **clause** - Protection against dangers and damage 1.4.97 Protection, basic Protection against dangers that may arise from direct contact with live parts of the installation (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.38 Contact, direct

In electrical installations the three major types of risk are -

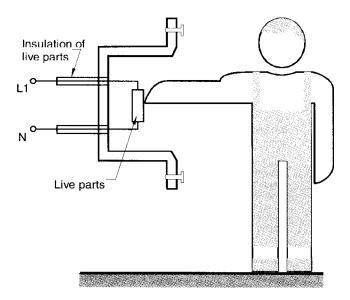
\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ - arising from contact with parts which are live in normal service (direct contact) or parts which become live under fault conditions (indirect contact).
 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ - likely to cause burns, fires and other injurious effects.
 \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ - equipment installed in areas where explosive

gases or dusts may be present

Electrocution/ Electric Arc/ Explosion

## **5.BASIC PROTECTION - (PROTECTION AGAINST DIRECT CONTACT)**

Refer to **clause 1.4.34** – Contact, direct: Direct contact occurs when a person contacts a conductor or conductive part that is –



## 1.4.38 Contact, direct

Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic).

## Refer to clause 1.5.4.2 – Methods of Protection:

Protection against direct contact with live parts shall be provided by one or any combination of the following methods –

1.5.4.2 Methods of protection

Basic protection shall be provided by one or any combination of the following methods:

(a) Insulation, in accordance with Clause 1.5.4.3.

(b) Barriers or enclosures, in accordance with Clause 1.5.4.4.

(c) Obstacles, in accordance with Clause 1.5.4.5.

(d) Placing out of reach, in accordance with Clause 1.5.4.6.

RCDs are not recognized as a sole means of basic protection against contact with live parts but may be used to augment one of the above methods.

Refer to clause 1.5.4.4 - Protection by barriers or enclosures:

Where barriers or enclosures protect live parts, the degree of protection afforded shall be at least -

 $\Box$ 

(a) Degree of protection Live parts shall be inside enclosures or behind barriers that provide a degree of protection of at least-

(i) IPXXB or IP2X; and

(ii) IP4X for horizontal top surfaces that are readily accessible.

\* The IP rating shall suit the environmental conditions and the relevant mounting position as specified by the manufacturer.

NOTE: This applies in particular to parts of enclosures that might serve as-(a) a floor; or

(b) a surface where objects on surrounding surfaces may be displaced into openings.

Larger openings are allowable in electrical equipment where they may be necessary for the proper operation and functioning of electrical equipment, or where they are required for the replacement of parts, such as lamps or fuses. In such cases-

(A) suitable precautions shall be taken to prevent unintentional contact with live parts; and

(B) as far as practicable, persons shall be advised that live parts can be touched through the opening and are not to be touched intentionally.

The removal of doors, lids and covers from an enclosure shall not be possible unless -

The removal of barriers, opening of enclosures, or withdraw	al of parts
of enclosures (doors, casings, lids, covers and the like) s	hall not be
possible.	

Exception: The removal of barriers is permitted where one of the following conditions apply:

1 The use of a key or tool is required.

NOTE: Electrical equipment complying with an appropriate Standard that allows the removal of barriers or enclosures by an alternative method is not prohibited.

2 An interlocking device is fitted that requires-

- switching off, or automatic disconnection, of the supply to all live parts protected by the barrier or enclosure that might be touched accidentally during or after the removal, opening or withdrawal process; and

- the barrier or enclosure to be replaced or closed before the supply can normally be switched on.

NOTE: Account should be taken of danger that may exist from the stored energy of power capacitors in electrical equipment or the capacitive effect of electrical equipment, such as busways, that have been isolated from the supply.

3 An intermediate barrier is provided that-

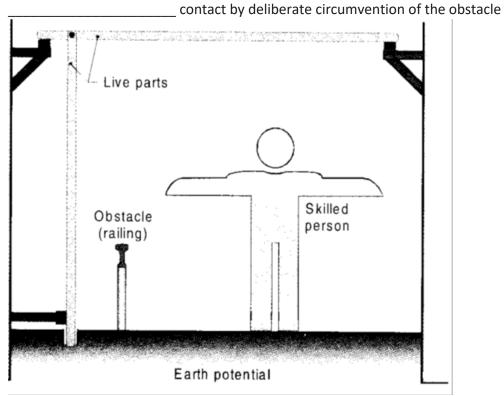
- prevents contact with all live parts when the barrier or enclosure is removed;

- is permanently in position, or arranged so that it is automatically put in position when the barrier or enclosure is removed; and

- requires the use of a key or tool to remove.

Refer to clause 1.5.4.5 - Protection by obstacles:

Obstacles are intended to prevent \_\_\_\_\_\_ contact with live parts but not



Obstacles are intended to prevent unintentional contact with live parts but not intentional contact by deliberate circumvention of the obstacle

Refer to **clause 1.5.4.6** - Protection by placing out of reach:

Simultaneously accessible parts at different voltages shall not be within arm's reach. If two parts are said to be simultaneously accessible, they are not more than \_\_\_\_\_\_ metres apart.

1 Two parts are deemed to be simultaneously accessible if they are not more than 2.5 m apart.

Refer to clause 1.4.12 - Arm's reach:

Arms reach is defined as:

The limit a person can	without assista	ance, from any point on a	surface
where persons usually	or		

Die Edit		obe Acrobat Reader	DC		– a ×
Home	Tools	Document	🖹 🖶 🖂 Q		
					Comment
			AS/NZS 3000:2018	36	🛴 Fill & Sign
			1.4.16 Arm's re	ach	
			stand or move	g from any point on a surface where persons usually about, to the limits that a person can reach with the irection without assistance (e.g. tools or ladder)	
			1.25	5 5 5 -0.75	
F			1.25	s the	
			LEGEND: S = Surface	e expected to be occupied by persons	
				DIMENSIONS IN METRES	
				FIGURE 1.1 ZONE OF ARM'S REACH	
			1.4.17 Authority A government application.	y, regulatory agency responsible for relevant legislation and its	Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC Start Free Trial
	C:\Users\	JKy 💟 /	🗧 In electrical in 🜔 Logout	Depar 🖬 6063-Workbo 🗱 📴 🤷 🌀 Facebook – Io 📆 AS3000-2018 🃆 UEENEEG063	低

the limits that a person can reach with the hand in any direction without assistance (e.g. tools or ladder)

The limit of arms reach -□above a surface is

\_\_\_\_\_ metres 2.5m

□adjacent to a surface is

\_\_\_\_\_ metres 1.25m

□below a surface is

\_\_\_\_\_ metres. 0.75m

## FAULT PROTECTION - (PROTECTION AGAINST INDIRECT CONTACT)

Refer to **clause 1.5.5.1** - Protection against indirect contact: The Rules require that protection shall be provided against \_\_\_\_\_\_that may arise from contact with exposed conductive parts which may become live – \_\_\_\_\_\_(indirect contact).

Protection shall be provided against dangers that may arise from contact with exposed conductive parts that may become live under fault conditions.

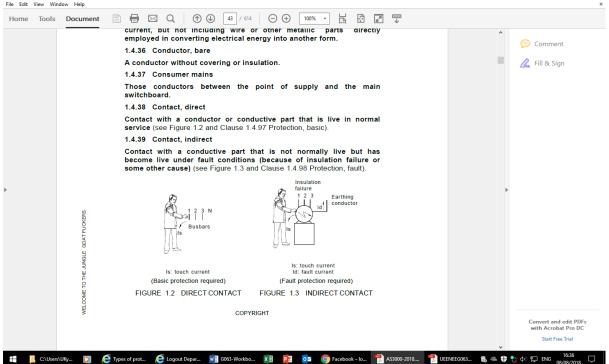
Refer to **clause 1.4.35** - Contact, indirect: Indirect contact is contact with a conductive part which is -

<pre>Ref to <u>durue 14.35</u> - Contact. Indirect: Indirect contact is contact with a conductive part which is -</pre>	e Tools Document			
			^	
				
Refr to dauge 1.5.2 + Methods of protection The methods of protecting against indirect contact are -		Live parts Protective conductor	Þ	
		Figure 4		
A 39 Contact, indirect that with a conductive part that is not normally live but has come live under fault conditions (because of insulation failure or ne other cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection, fault). Windful decompositions Windful decompositio				
that with a conductive part that is not normally live but has come live under fault conditions (because of insulation failure or ne other cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection, fault).	C:\Users\UKy			
the other cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection, fault).		🗧 in electrical in 🖉 Logout Depar 📲 G063-Workbo 🚺 📴 🔯 🎯 Facebook – Io 📆 AS3000-2018 📆 UEENEEGO63.	. 🖪 🗠 🕂 🕇	
<ul> <li>current, but not including wire or oner metallic parts directly employed in converting electrical energy into another form.</li> <li>1.4.35 Conductor, bare</li> <li>A conductor without covering or insulation.</li> <li>1.4.37 Consumer mains</li> <li>Those conductors between the point of supply and the main awitchboard.</li> <li>1.4.38 Contact, direct</li> <li>Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.92 Protection, basic).</li> <li>1.4.39 Contact, indirect</li> <li>Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has become live under fault conditions (bacuse of insulation failure of some other cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection, fault).</li> <li>I busch current (assprotection requires).</li> <li>I busch current (assprotection requires</li></ul>	.39 Contac tact with	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but	has	( 다) 후교 ENG 08/08/2018
These conductors between the point of supply and the main switchboard.	. 39 Contac tact with come live u he other ca W-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Resder it View Window Help	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protectio ∞	has Iure c	2 di fi ENG <sub>08/08/2018</sub> Dr ilt).
1.4.39 Contact, indirect         Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has become live under fault conditions (because of insulation failure or some other cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.96 Protection, fault).         Image: State of the cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.96 Protection, fault).         Image: State of the cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.96 Protection, fault).         Image: State of the cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.96 Protection, fault).         Image: State of the cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.96 Protection, fault).         Image: State of the cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.96 Protection required).         Image: State of the cause 1.4.96 Protection required.         Image: State of the cause 1.12 DIRECT CONTACT         Image: State of the cause 1.2 DIRECT CONTACT         Image: State of the ca	. 39 Contac tact with ome live u he other ca W-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Resder it View Window Help	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protectio c	has lure c n, fau	(1) 1 − 0 (1) 1 − 0 (2) Comment
Statistics       Statistics <td>. 39 Contac tact with ome live u he other ca W-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Resder it View Window Help</td> <td>t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including or insulation. 1.4.36 Conductor, bare A conductor without covering or insulation. 1.4.37 Consumer mains Those conductors between the point of supply and the main switchboard. 1.4.38 Contact, direct Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal</td> <td>has lure c n, fau</td> <td>(1) 1 − 0 (1) 1 − 0 (2) Comment</td>	. 39 Contac tact with ome live u he other ca W-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Resder it View Window Help	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, put not including or insulation. 1.4.36 Conductor, bare A conductor without covering or insulation. 1.4.37 Consumer mains Those conductors between the point of supply and the main switchboard. 1.4.38 Contact, direct Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal	has lure c n, fau	(1) 1 − 0 (1) 1 − 0 (2) Comment
Convert and edit PDF with Acrobat Pro DC Start Free Trial C:USers/UKy D C In electrical in C Logout Depar C Good Workbo R C C Start Free Trial C:USers/UKy D C In electrical in C Logout Depar C Good Start Free Trial fer to clause 1.5.5.2 - Methods of protection:	. 39 Contac tact with ome live u he other ca W-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Resder it View Window Help	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection current, but not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, but not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, but not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, but not including wire or other metallic parts directly current, but not including of insulation. 1.4.36 Conductor, bare A conductor without covering or insulation. 1.4.37 Consumer mains Those conductors between the point of supply and the main switchboard. 1.4.38 Contact, direct Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.4.39 Contact, indirect Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has become live under fault conditions (because of insulation failure or some other cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection, fault).	has lure c n, fau	(1) 1 − 0 (1) 1 − 0 (2) Comment
Convert and edit PDF with Acrobat Pro DC Start Free Trial Cellsers/UKy D C In electrical in C Logout Depar S G053-Workbo R G0 G07092018 R G0 C R CONVERT Fer to clause 1.5.5.2 - Methods of protection:	2. 39 Contac tact with a come live un le other can b0-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader it View Window Help e Tools Document	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection c current, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly employed in converting electrical energy into another form. 1.4.36 Conductor, bare A conductor without covering or insulation. 1.4.37 Consumer mains Those conductors between the point of supply and the main service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.4.38 Contact, direct Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.4.39 Contact, indirect Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has become live under fault conditions (because of insulation failure or some other cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection, fault).	has lure c n, fau	(1) f_2 ENG 08/08/2018 Or ↓ t) © Comment
	2. 39 Contac tact with a come live un le other can b0-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader it View Window Help e Tools Document	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection or Current, but not including wre of other metallic parts directly employed in converting electrical energy into another form. 1.35 Conductor, bare A conductor without covering or insulation. 1.37 Consumer mains Those conductors between the point of supply and the main switchboard. 1.38 Contact, direct Current full conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.39 Contact, indirect Curter with a conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.39 Contact, indirect Curter that conductive part that is not normally live but has been live under fault conditions (because of insulation failers former cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.39 Contact, indirect Curter that conductive part that is not normally live but has been live under fault conditions (because of insulation failers former cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has been live under fault conditions (because of insulation failers former cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Clause 1.50	has lure c n, fau	(1) 1 − 0 (1) 1 − 0 (2) Comment
•	2. 39 Contac tact with a come live un le other can b0-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader it View Window Help e Tools Document	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protection or Current, but not including wre of other metallic parts directly employed in converting electrical energy into another form. 1.35 Conductor, bare A conductor without covering or insulation. 1.37 Consumer mains Those conductors between the point of supply and the main switchboard. 1.38 Contact, direct Current full conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.39 Contact, indirect Curter with a conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.39 Contact, indirect Curter that conductive part that is not normally live but has been live under fault conditions (because of insulation failers former cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic). 1.39 Contact, indirect Curter that conductive part that is not normally live but has been live under fault conditions (because of insulation failers former cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has been live under fault conditions (because of insulation failers former cause) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.50 Clause 1.4.97 Protection, fault). 1.50 Clause 1.50	has lure c n, fau	Convert and edit PPF with Acrobat Pro DC
	2. 39 Contact tact with a come live un re other can be other can be the contact of the seder it View Window Help e Tools Document	t, indirect a conductive part that is not normally live but nder fault conditions (because of insulation fai use) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protected (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.98 Protected (content, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly content, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly content, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly content, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly content, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly content, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly content, put not including wire or other metallic parts directly content with a conductor, bare A conductor without covering or insulation inclubeard. 1.33 Contact direct Content with a conductor part that is live in normal witchboard. 1.34 Contact direct Content with a conductive part that is live in normal witchboard. 1.34 Contact direct Content with a conductive part that is live in normal witchboard. 1.34 Contact direct Content with a conductive part that is live in normal witchboard. 1.34 Contact with a conductive part that is live in normal witchboard. 1.34 Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has conductor with a conductive part that is not normally live but has conductor with a conductive part that is not normally live but has conducted with a conductive part that is not normally live but has conductive under fault conditions (because of also plateitor failure also with a conductor required. 1.34 Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has conductive under fault conditions (because of also plateitor failure failured is conductive. 1.35 Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has conducted with a conductive plate that is not normally live but has conducted with a conductive plate that is not normally live but has conducted with a conductive plate that is not normally live but has conducted with a conductive plate that is not normalic but has conducted with	has lure c n, fau	Convert and edit PDF: Virth Acrobat Pro DC Start Frei Trial

1.4.98 Protection, fault Protection against dangers that may arise from indirect contact with live parts of the installation (contact with an exposed conductive part that is not normally live but has become live under fault conditions) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.39 Contact, indirect).

o x

AS3000-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC File Edit View Window Help



1.5.5.2 Methods of protection

Fault protection shall be provided by one or any combination of the following methods:

(a) Automatically disconnect the supply on the occurrence of a fault likely to cause a current flow through a body in contact with exposed conductive parts, where the value of that current is equal to or greater than the shock current, in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.3.
(b) Prevent a fault current from passing through a body by the use of Class II equipment or equivalent insulation, in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.4.
(c) Prevent a fault current from passing through a body by electrical separation of the system, in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.5.
NOTE: Clause 7.4 provides further guidance on electrical separation.
(d) Limit the fault current.

The most commonly used method to protect against indirect contact is:



The severity of electric shock depends on the -

**The severity of electrical shock** or electrocution injuries usually **depends** on three things: (1) the path the current travels in and through the body, (2) the amount of voltage (high-voltage versus low-voltage), and (3) the type of current (alternating current or AC versus direct current or DC).

## Refer to clause 1.4.95 - Touch voltage:

A touch voltage is a voltage –

1.4.125 Touch voltage

Voltage appearing between simultaneously accessible parts. NOTES: 1 This term is used only in connection with fault protection. 2 In certain cases the value of the touch voltage may be appreciably influenced by the impedance of the person or livestock in contact with these

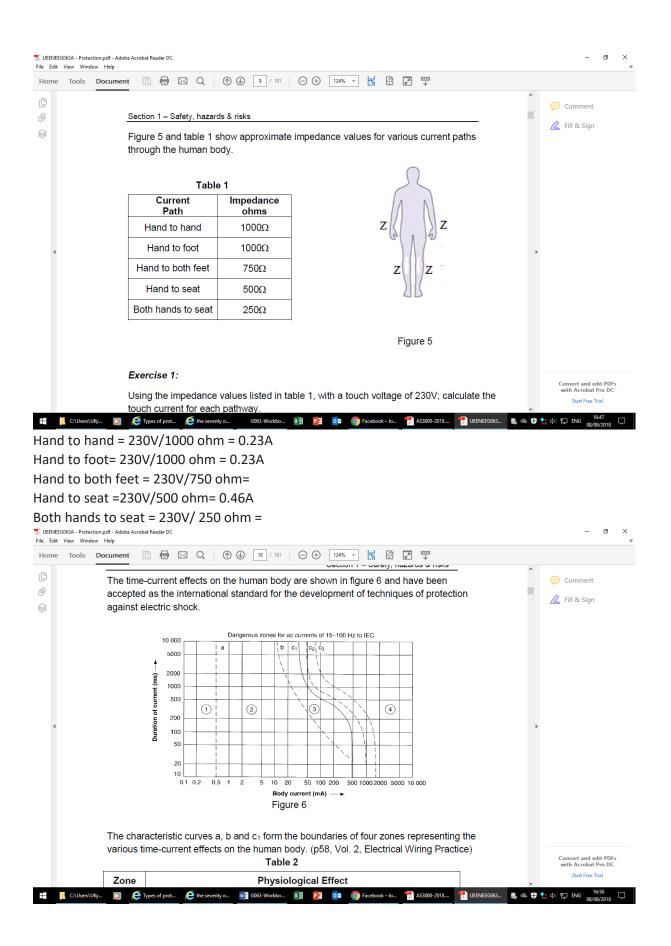
Refer to **clause 1.4.94** - Touch current: A touch current is a current –

1.4.124 Touch current

parts.

Electric current that passes through a human body, or an animal body, when that body touches one or more accessible parts of electrical equipment or an electrical installation, under normal conditions or fault conditions.

		Figure 5	^
		Ū	Comment
Exercise 1:			<u> </u> Fill & Sign
Using the impedance values touch current for each pathy	s listed in table 1, with a touc vay.	h voltage of 230V; calculate	the
Pathway	Calculation	Touch Current	
Hand to hand			
Hand to foot			4
Hand to both feet			
Hand to seat			
Both hands to seat			
			Convert and edit PD with Acrobat Pro D Start Free Trial



				1 form the boundaries of four zones repr numan body. (p58, Vol. 2, Electrical Wiri <b>Table 2</b>	-		💬 Comment 🔏 Fill & Sign
	Zone			Physiological Effect			
	1	usually no re	eaction				
	2	usually no ha	armful ph	vsiological effects			
		<ul> <li>usually no or</li> </ul>	rganic daı	nage			
	3	likelihood of	muscular	contractions and difficulty in breathing			
		possibility of	cardiac a	rrest, increasing with value of current ar	nd time	Þ	
		<ul> <li>including the</li> </ul>	effects o	f zone 3, and:			
		c1 probab	bility of ve	ntricular fibrillation increased to 5%			
		➤ c <sub>2</sub> probab	bility of ve	ntricular fibrillation increased to 50%			
	4	<ul> <li>c<sub>3</sub> probab</li> </ul>	bility of ve	ntricular fibrillation increased to above 5	50%		
		<ul> <li>further increases severe burns</li> </ul>		rrent and time is likely to cause arrest a	ind		
		Severe burns	3				
							Convert and edit P with Acrobat Pro
	Page 10 of 18	1			Version 1		
C:\Users\U 063A - Protec View Windo Tools	tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba ow Help	02/02/2016 rpes of prot 🜔 the severi	_	53-Workbo 🕅 👔 🍺 🍞 Facebook - Io 📆 AS	Version 1 3000-2018 VEENEEG063	v ₿ ← ♥ \$2	Start Free Trial (가) 및 ENG 16-51 08/08/207 — 급
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated	102/02/2016 rpes of prot		53-Workbo 👔 👔 🧿 Facebook - Io 📆 AS	3000-2018 📆 UEENEEG063		イル 町 ENG 16:51
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated	102/02/2016 rpes of prot	⊕ ⊕ [	53-Workbo 👔 👔 🧿 Facebook - Io 📆 AS	3000-2018 📆 UEENEEG063	v ₿ ≪ ♥ ₹2	(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated  Ny  Ny  Constrained for the second sec	102/02/2016 rpes of prot E the severi t Reader DC	⊕ ⊕ [	53-Workbo 👔 👔 🧿 Facebook - Io 📆 AS	3000-2018 📆 UEENEEG063	× = ← ♥ ♥	(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	o2/02/2016 rpes of prot C the severi t Reader DC The severity of the severity t Reader DC C the severity of the severity of the severity t Reader DC C the severity of th	⑦ ④ [ ds & risks f 200mA,	53-Workbo 👔 👔 🧿 Facebook - Io 📆 AS	3000-2018 		(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	o2/02/2016 rpes of prot C the sever t Reader DC The sever t Reader DC C the sever t Reader DC t Reader DC C the sever t Reader DC t Rea	⑦ ④ [ ds & risks f 200mA,	63-Workbo R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R R	3000-2018 		(1651 08/08/201 − © Comment
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	102/02/2016 Treader DC The adder DC The a	⊕ [     ds & risks     f 200mA,     below?	63-Workbo R R O S Scebook-lo A S	3000-2018 		(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	o2/02/2016 rpes of prot C the severi t Reader DC The severite t Reader DC The severit t Reade	⊕ [     ds & risks     f 200mA,     below?	63-Workbo R R O S Scebook-lo A S	3000-2018 		(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	02/02/2016         rpes of prot         rpes of prot         reder DC         Image: the severity of the severity	⊕ [     ds & risks     f 200mA,     below?	63-Workbo R R O S Scebook-lo A S	3000-2018 		(1651 08/08/201 − © Comment
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	o2/02/2016 rpes of prot C the sever t Reader DC The sever t Reader DC	⊕ [     ds & risks     f 200mA,     below?	63-Workbo R R O S Scebook-lo A S	3000-2018 		(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	02/02/2016         rpes of prot         Protect of prot         Protect of prot         It Reader DC	⊕ [     ds & risks     f 200mA,     below?	63-Workbo R R O S Scebook-lo A S	3000-2018 		(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated Ky D C T tion.pdf - Adobe Acroba w Help Document Sectii Exec For a	02/02/2016 rpes of prot C the severi t Reader DC The severity t Read	⊕ [     ds & risks     f 200mA,     below?	63-Workbo R R O S Scebook-lo A S	3000-2018 		(1)
063A - Protec View Windo	Last Updated	02/02/2016         rpes of prot         Protect of prot         Protect of prot         It Reader DC	⊕ [     ds & risks     f 200mA,     below?	63-Workbo R R O S Scebook-lo A S	3000-2018 		(1)

## 200mA, 20ms= Zone 2= usually no harmful physiological effects

200mA, 100ms—Zone 3 -•usually no organic damage □ likelihood of muscular contractions and difficulty in breathing □ possibility of cardiac arrest, increasing with value of current and time 200mA, 500ms- Zone 3 C1usually no organic damage likelihood of muscular contractions and difficulty in breathing possibility of cardiac arrest, increasing with value of current and time

c1 probability of ventricular fibrillation increased to 5%

200mA, 1S- Zone 3-C2 usually no organic damage likelihood of muscular contractions and difficulty in breathing possibility of cardiac arrest, increasing with value of current and time

c2 probability of ventricular fibrillation increased to 50%

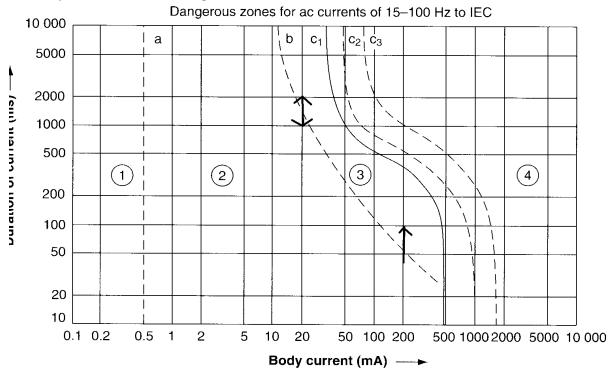
200mA, 2S Zone 3 C3

usually no organic damage likelihood of muscular contractions and difficulty in breathing possibility of cardiac arrest, increasing with value of current and time

c3 probability of ventricular fibrillation increased to above 50%

### Exercise 3:

Curve b is the division between zones 2 and 3. For a touch current of 20mA, how long would it take for the body to cross the division and enter zone 3 and what would be the impedance of the body when the touch voltage is 230V?



 $2 \sec - 1 \sec = 1 \sec$ 

Z = 230V/ 20ma = 11.5 x 1000 = 11500 ohm

Page 12

What is the effect on the heat produced, if the current in a conductor is doubled? 4 times higher

Refer to **clause 1.5.8** - Protection against thermal effects in normal service: Electrical installations shall be arranged so that there is no risk of ignition of flammable materials because of -□\_\_\_\_\_ Or

in normal service.

1.5.8 Protection against thermal effects in normal service Electrical installations shall be arranged so that there is no risk of ignition of flammable materials because of high temperature or electric arc in normal service. During normal operation of the electrical equipment there shall be no risk of persons or livestock suffering burns.

During normal operation of the electrical equipment there shall be no risk of or livestock suffering \_\_\_\_\_.

During normal operation of the electrical equipment there shall be no risk of persons or livestock suffering burns.

Where a wiring system passes through a wall, floor or ceiling, what should be maintained?

1.5.12 Protection against the spread of fire Protection shall be provided against fire initiated or propagated by components of the electrical installation.

Electrical equipment shall be selected, installed and protected such that the equipment will not-

(a) obstruct escape routes, either directly or by the products of combustion:

(b) contribute to or propagate a fire;

Refer to clause 3.7.2.3 - Loosening of connections: vibration, alteration of materials or temperature variations to which the connections are likely to be subjected in normal service. Loosening of connections may lead to arcing, fire and explosion.

3.7.2.3 Loosening of connections

3.7.2.3.1 General

Connections shall be made so that no loosening is likely because of vibration, alteration of materials or temperature variations to which the connections are likely to be subjected in normal service.

## Refer to **clause 4.2.2.3** – Protection from high temperatures: Provision shall be made against the effects of:

(as a result of direct contact), and;
(air temperature rise)

## 4.2.2.3 Protection from high temperatures

(a) High surface temperature Where fixed electrical equipment could attain surface temperatures that would cause a fire hazard to adjacent materials, the electrical equipment shall be-

(i) mounted on or within materials that will withstand such temperatures and are of low thermal conductance;

(ii) screened from combustible building elements by materials that

will withstand such temperatures and are of low thermal conductance; or

(iii) mounted at a sufficient distance from any material on which such temperatures could have deleterious thermal effects, any means of support being of low thermal conductance so as to allow safe dissipation of heat.

230

# TABLE 4.2

# MINIMUM DISTANCE BETWEEN LAMP AND ILLUMINATED FLAMMABLE MATERIALS

Rating W	Minimum distance m
≤100	0.6
>100 ≤300	1.0
>300	1.8

What is the minimum default distance a 500 W directional shop-lighter fitting should be from the front edge of a book rack in a department store?

1.8 m

## **11. PROTECTION AGAINST OVERCURRENT**

Refer to **clause 1.5.9** - Protection against overcurrent: Protection against overcurrent may be provided by - 1.5.9 Protection against overcurrent

Protection shall be provided against injury or property damage because of excessive temperatures or electromechanical stresses caused by any overcurrents likely to arise in live conductors. Protection may be provided by one of the following methods: (a) Automatic disconnection on the occurrence of an overcurrent, before this overcurrent attains a dangerous value, taking into account its duration.

(b) Limiting the maximum overcurrent to a safe value and duration.

An overcurrent is a current that exceeds a particular rated value. An Overcurrent may occur in a circuit as a result of:

1.4.90 Overcurrent A current exceeding the rated value of electrical equipment.

Overload or Under voltage

Refer to **clause 1.4.37** - Current, fault:

A fault current is defined as a current resulting from an \_\_\_\_\_\_. or from the bridging of \_\_\_\_\_\_.

1.4.41 Current, fault A current resulting from an insulation failure or from the bridging of insulation.

Refer to **clause 1.4.38** - Current, overload: An overload current is defined as an \_\_\_\_\_\_

1.4.42 Current, overload An overcurrent occurring in a circuit that is electrically sound.

Refer to **clause 1.4.39** - Current, short-circuit: A short-circuit is defined a fault current arising from \_\_\_\_\_\_

1.4.43 Current, short-circuit

A fault current resulting from a fault of negligible impedance between live conductors having a difference in potential under normal operating conditions. The fault path may include the path from active via earth to the neutral.

Refer to **clause 1.5.10** - Protection against earth fault currents:

Protective earthing conductors and any other parts intended to carry an earth fault current shall be capable of carrying that current without attaining -

1.5.10 Protection against earth fault currents Protective earthing conductors and any other parts intended to carry an earth fault current shall be capable of carrying that current without attaining excessive temperature.

## **12. PROTECTION AGAINST OVERVOLTAGE**

Refer to **clause 2.7.1** - Protection against overvoltage - general: Overvoltage may occur in an installation as a result of:

D\_\_\_\_\_\_

□\_\_\_\_\_

D\_\_\_\_\_

2.7.1 General

Where an electrical installation is protected against overvoltages that may cause danger to persons or property, the requirements of Clauses 2.7.2 and 2.7.3 shall apply.

NOTES:

1 The causes of overvoltage in an electrical installation include the following: (a) An insulation fault between the electrical installation and a circuit of higher voltage.

(b) Switching operations.

(c) Lightning.

(d) Resonant phenomena.

2 Protection against overvoltages should be provided in areas where lightning is prevalent.

Protection against overvoltage may be achieved by:

□\_\_\_\_\_

2.7.2 Protection by insulation or separation

2.7.3 Protection by protective devices

A common method to protect circuits and equipment from the undesirable effects of overvoltage is to install \_\_\_\_\_\_ (S.P.D's)

Fuse/ Overload Protection Circuit breaker

# **PROTECTION AGAINST MECHANICAL HAZARDS**

Refer to **clause 1.5.13** - Protection against injury from mechanical movement: Protection shall be provided against injury from mechanical movement of electricallyactuated equipment, where - 1.5.13 Protection against injury from mechanical movement Protection shall be provided against injury from mechanical movement of electrically actuated equipment, where-

(a) mechanical maintenance may involve risk of physical injury; or(b) emergency stopping may be necessary to remove any unexpected

danger.

Protection may be provided by the provision of devices to disconnect or isolate electrical equipment, as may be necessary to prevent or remove danger

Electric motors shall be provided with suitable devices for –

Overload protection'

230V 50HZ

Name a possible cause of automatic motor restarting and reversal that must be protected against

Phase reversal protection

**Refer to Section 1, Clause 1.6** of AS/NZS3000 and complete the following: An electrical installation shall be designed to: a)protect \_\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_from harmful effects; b)function as intended; \_\_\_\_\_ and be \_\_\_\_\_\_ with the c)connect. electricitydistribution system, or other source of supply, to which the electricalinstallation is to be connected; d)minimize \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the event of a fault; and e)facilitate \_\_\_\_\_\_ operation, inspection, testing and \_\_\_\_\_\_ 1.6 DESIGN OF AN ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION 1.6.1 General An electrical installation shall be designed to-(a) protect persons, livestock and property from harmful effects; (b) function correctly as intended; (c) connect, operate safely and be compatible with the electricity distribution system, or other source of supply, to which the electrical installation is to be connected: (d) facilitate safe operation, inspection, testing and maintenance; and \* (e) reduce inconvenience in the event of a fault. The nominal voltage for supply in Australia is \_\_\_\_\_/ V, generated at \_\_\_\_\_

Generally the supply in Australia is A.C or D.C? \_\_\_\_

(b) The number of supply phases connected / permitted will depend on the maximum demand and load types. Phases permitted will generally be:

- Installations with a maximum demand less than 100A \_\_\_\_

- Installations exceeding 100A or with 3 phase equipment \_\_\_\_\_

(Note: 3 phase supply is not always available. The NSW Service and Installation Rules gives guidance on the number of phases permitted to be connected)

AC

Table 1.1: Allowable Number of Phases

Not exceeding 100 A	One phase and neutral
Exceeding 100A	Two or three phases
	and neutral
A motor exceeding 2.0	Three phases and
kW	neutra

**NSW Electrical Service Rules** 

## One phase and neutral Two or three phases and neutral

The nominal supply voltage in Australia is \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_ volts Not 240/415 Volts.

230V/50Hz

Voltage should not rise above: \_\_\_\_% ( \_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_ V) - Voltage should not fall below: \_\_\_\_% ( \_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_ V)

(a) for Australia, 230/400 V + 10% to  $\,\cdot$  6% (in accordance with AS 60038); and

(b) for New Zealand, 230/400 V + 6% to  $\cdot 6\%$  (in accordance with IEC 60038).

The standard generated frequency in Australia is \_\_\_\_\_\_ Hz.

50HZ

The \_\_\_\_\_\_ earthing system is used for protection in Australia. Neutral

Harmonic current or other limitations. Modern electronic equipment such as P.C's, inverters, electronic ballasts and variable speed drives cause harmonics. Harmonics can cause transformers and neutral conductors to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

These **harmonic** loads have a significant **impact** on distribution **transformers**. The primary **effect** of **harmonic currents** are **the additional power losses** in **transformer** components,

which result in increase in generated heat, as well as reduction of **transformer's** life-expectancy.

The 4 methods permitted to be used in the determination of maximum demand:

## 2.2.2 Maximum demand

The maximum demand in consumer mains, submains and final subcircuits, taking account of the physical distribution and intended usage of electrical equipment in the electrical installation and the manner in which the present requirements might vary, shall be determined using one of the methods set out in Items (a) to (d). If the actual measured maximum demand is found to exceed that obtained by calculation or assessment, the measured value shall be deemed to be the maximum demand. (a) Calculation The maximum demand may be calculated in accordance with the guidance given in this Standard for the appropriate type of electrical installation and electrical equipment supplied. NOTE: Guidance on the determination of maximum demand is provided for basic electrical installations in Appendix C. It is recognized that there may be considerable differences in loading from one electrical installation to another. Alternative methods of calculating the maximum demand may be used taking account of all the relevant information available for any particular electrical installation. (b) Assessment The maximum demand may be assessed where-(i) the electrical equipment operates under conditions of fluctuating or intermittent loading, or a definite duty cycle; (ii) the electrical installation is large and complex; or (iii) special types of occupancy exist. (c) Measurement The maximum demand may be determined by the highest rate of consumption of electricity recorded or sustained over a period of 30 minutes when demand is at its highest by a maximum demand indicator or recorder. (d) Limitation The maximum demand may be determined by the current rating of a fixed setting circuit-breaker, or by the load setting of an adjustable circuit-breaker. The maximum demand of consumer mains and submains may be determined by the sum of the current settings of the circuit-breakers protecting the associated final subcircuit/s and any further submain/s.

If the actual measured maximum demand is found to exceed that obtained by calculation or assessment, which value should be used?

Measured value

## **17. VOLTAGE DROP CONSIDERATIONS**

As discussed earlier in this section, the nominal supply voltage for Australian installations is \_\_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ V with a tolerance of +10% and – 6%. Therefore the voltage at the terminals of energy consuming equipment (load) should not fall below \_\_\_\_\_\_ V for single phase, or \_\_\_\_\_\_ V for 3 phase. Installations need to be designed so as the collective or total voltage drop across all parts of a circuit (mains, sub-mains and final sub-circuits) is not to high so as to limit the remaining voltage at the equipment terminals.

This percentage of voltage drop is spread across the whole installation, from the point of supply to the load. It is not applied separately to consumer's main, sub-main and final sub-circuit. See figure 15.

230V/50HZ

### 230-23= 217V or 400-40= 360V

In A.C. circuits, opposition to current flow occurs because of cable resistance and circuit reactance. This "total" opposition is known as \_\_\_\_\_\_.

## Impedance

Voltage drop in an AC circuit can be determined by Vd = IZ.

 $\Box$  It can also be determined that if Z is increased, voltage drop will \_\_\_\_\_\_.

As current is generally fixed by the impedance of the connected load, the resistance of the cable is all that can be altered. Long runs of cable anywhere in the installation will cause the voltage drop to increase toward the permissible amount. Under-voltage can cause electric motors to overheat and fail and render some electronic devices inoperable. A simple solution to the problem is to increase cable size. AS/NZS clause \_\_\_\_\_\_ covers requirements for Voltage Drop.

Increase/ increase

3. 6. 1 General
Under normal service conditions, the voltage at the terminals of any powerconsuming
electrical equipment shall be not less than the lower limit
specified in the relevant electrical equipment Standard.
Where the electrical equipment concerned is not covered by a Standard, the voltage at the terminals shall be such as not to impair the safe functioning of the electrical equipment.
3. 6. 2 Value
The cross-sectional area of every current-carrying conductor shall be

such that the voltage drop between the point of supply for the low voltage electrical installation and any point in that electrical installation does not exceed 5% of the nominal voltage at the point of supply.

Tools	Document $\square$ $\blacksquare$ $\square$ $\bigcirc$	
	devices inoperable. A simple solution to the problem is to increase cable size.	▲ 🥟 Comment
	AS/NZS clause covers requirements for Voltage Drop.	🛵 Fill & Sign
	Exercise 4:	
	Figure 16 is a 230 V single phase installation.	
	(a) Determine the total conductor voltage drop. V	
	(b) Does the circuit comply with Australian standards (yes/No) why?	
	Consumers Sub Final	Þ
	Mains Main Switch Mains Sub Dist Sub-Circuit Load	
	3 V 3.5 V 4 V	
	Figure 16	
	Exercise 5:	
	Figure 17 is a 400 V three phase installation.	
	(a) Determine the total conductor voltage dropV	Convert and edit PI
	(b) Does the circuit comply with Australian standards (yes/No) why?	with Acrobat Pro D

#### Vt= 3+3.5+4 = 10.5V

ne	Tools	Document	🖹 🖶 🖂 Q, 🕜 🕹 20 / 181 🕞 🕂 124% 🔹 🙀 🛃 🐺	
			Figure 16	Comment
		Exerc	vise 5:	
		Figure	e 17 is a 400 V three phase installation.	🛴 Fill & Sign
		(a)	Determine the total conductor voltage drop.	
		(b)	Does the circuit comply with Australian standards (yes/No) why?	
		(6)		
			Consumers Final	
			Mains Main Switch Sub-Circuit	
			Vd = 13 V Board Vd = 12 V	Þ
			Figure 17	
		Page 20	of 181 Version 1	
			lated 02/02/2016	
				Convert and edit PDI with Acrobat Pro DO
		S	Section 1 – Safety, hazards & risks	Start Free Trial

#### Vt = 25 V

400v 5% = 20v It is more than 5%

#### Not compliance

e Tools	Document 🗒 🖶 🖂 Q, 🕐 🕢 21 / 181 🕞 🕂 124% 🔻 🙀 🛃 🐺	
		^
		🥟 Comment
		🔔 Fill & Sign
	Section 1 – Safety, hazards & risks	
	Exercise 6:	
	Figure 18 is a 400 V three phase installation.	
	Figure To is a 400 V trifee priase installation.	
	(a) Determine the total permissible voltage drop on the final sub-circuit conductor.	
	Consumers Final	
	Mains Main Switch Sub-Circuit Load	
	$V_d = 22 V$ Board $V_p = ? V$	
	Figure 18	
	An in death analysis of Voltage Decessill be serviced in forther write of study.	
	An in depth analysis of Voltage Drop will be covered in further units of study.	
		Convert and edit PDP with Acrobat Pro DC
	18. ARRANGEMENT OF CIRCUITS.	Start Free Trial

### **ARRANGEMENT OF CIRCUITS.**

To satisfy the design requirements AS/NZS3000, it is necessary to split the installation into a number of circuits. It was noted earlier that reducing the current drawn by a circuit, we can also reduce the voltage drop across the circuit conductor(s). (V=IZ). Refer to **clause 1.6.5** – Electrical Installation Circuit Arrangement

Arranging installations into circuits:

□ provides minimised \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the event of a fault,

and facilitates;

□ \_\_\_\_\_\_ □ \_\_\_\_\_

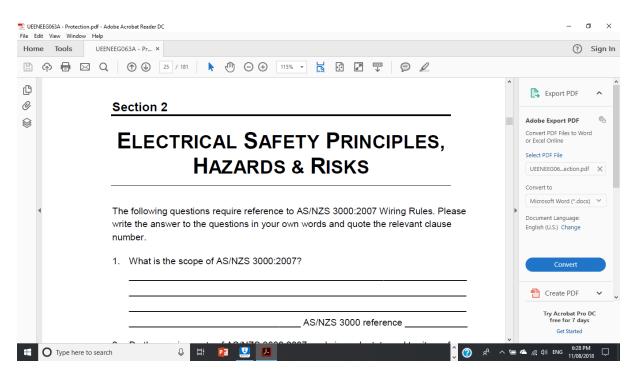
□ \_\_\_\_\_

1.6.5 Electrical installation circuit arrangement

Every electrical installation shall be divided into circuits as necessary to-

(a) avoid danger and minimize inconvenience in the event of a fault; and

## (b) facilitate safe operation, inspection, testing and maintenance.



1.What is the scope of AS/NZS 3000:2007?

## 1.1 SCOPE

This Standard sets out requirements for the design, construction and verification of electrical installations, including the selection and installation of electrical equipment forming part of such electrical installations.

These requirements are intended to protect persons, livestock, and property from electric shock, fire and physical injury hazards that may arise from an electrical installation that is used with reasonable care and with due regard to the intended purpose of the electrical installation.

2.Do the requirements of AS/NZS 3000:2007 apply in each state and territory of Australia?

## 1.2 APPLICATION

This Standard may be applied through legislative requirements, made in each state and territory of Australia and in New Zealand, concerned with the safety of electrical installations. The Standard may also be applied in conjunction with any additional requirements, exemptions or restrictions in such legislation.

The principal application of this Standard is to electrical installations in all

types of premises and land used by electricity consumers. However, the Standard may also be referenced or applied through legislative or other requirements relating to the effect of electrical installations in matters such

as the following:

(a) Safety of workplaces.

NOTE: For example, any relevant work health and safety legislation and associated codes.

(b) Safe design and construction of buildings.

NOTE: For example, national building codes [such as the National Construction Code (NCC), New Zealand Building Code (NZBC)] and the associated referenced Standards. See Appendix E for information on NCC and NZBC.

(c) Electricity generation, transmission and distribution systems.

(d) Safe connection to electricity distribution systems.

NOTE: For example, service rules and conditions provided by local electricity distributors.

(e) Qualifications of electricity workers.

3. What is meant by the term "readily accessible"?

1.4.3 Accessible, readily

\* Capable of being reached quickly and without climbing over or removing obstructions, or using a movable ladder, and in any case not more than 2.0 m above the ground, floor or platform.

Home Tools UEENEEG063A - Pr... ? Sign In AS3000-2018.pdf × 🖺 ሱ 🖶 🖂 Q, 🕜 (i) 4 🖡 🖑 🖂 🕀 🗇 📿 😨 🖉 🖉 🖉 🖉 😫 Export PDF ^ AS/NZS 3000:2018 36 Adobe Export PDF ¢ Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online 1.4.16 Arm's reach A zone extending from any point on a surface where persons usually stand or move about, to the limits that a person can reach with the hand in any direction without assistance (e.g. tools or ladder) (see Figure 1.1). ect PDF File Convert to Microsoft Word (\*.docx) English (U.S.) Change 0 75 Create PDF ry Acrobat Pro DO free for 7 days LEGEND: S = Surface expected to be occupied by persons Type here to search Q. (?) ~ 🛥 🗠

4. What is meant by the term "arms reach" and what are the limits of arms reach?

5. What level of insulation applies to Class I equipment?

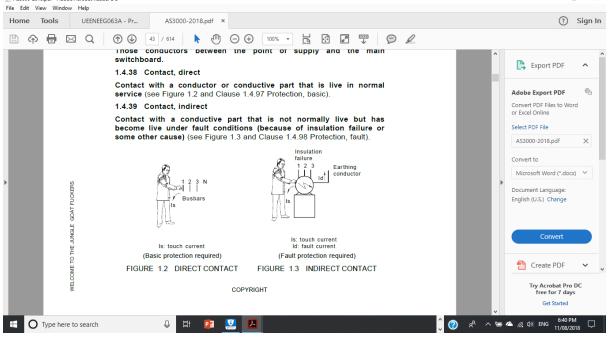
1.4.31 Class I equipment

Equipment in which protection against electric shock does not rely on basic insulation only, but which includes an additional safety precaution in that accessible conductive parts are connected to the protective earthing conductor in the electrical installation in such a way that accessible parts cannot become live in the event of a failure of the basic insulation. NOTES:

1 Class I equipment may have parts with double insulation or parts operating at SELV.

2 For equipment intended for use with a flexible cord or cable, this provision includes a protective earthing conductor as part of the flexible cord or cable

6.What is direct contact? 1.4.38 Contact, direct Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic).



o x

7.A person receives an electric shock from the metal frame of an electric motor. According to AS/NZS 3000:2007, what is the name given to this type of contact?

## 1.4.39 Contact, indirect

Contact with a conductive part that is not normally live but has become live under fault conditions (because of insulation failure or some other cause)

8.A circuit does not have an electrical fault, but draws excessive current. What is thename given to this current?1.4.42 Current, overloadAn overcurrent occurring in a circuit that is electrically sound.

9.What is the definition of an obstacle?1.4.87 ObstacleA part preventing unintentional direct contact, but not preventing direct contact by deliberate action.

10.Describe the meaning of the term "touch voltage". 1. 4. 125 Touch voltage

Voltage appearing between simultaneously accessible parts. NOTES:

1 This term is used only in connection with fault protection.

2 In certain cases the value of the touch voltage may be appreciably influenced by the impedance of the person or livestock in contact with these parts.

11.What is meant by the term "touch current"?

1.4.124 Touch current

Electric current that passes through a human body, or an animal body, when that body touches one or more accessible parts of electrical equipment or an electrical installation, under normal conditions or fault conditions.

12.List the three major types of risk in an electrical installation as identified by AS/NZS 3000:2007.

1.5 FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES

1.5.1 Protection against dangers and damage

The requirements of this Standard are intended to ensure the safety of persons, livestock, and property against dangers and damage that may arise in the reasonable use of electrical installations.

In electrical installations, the three major types of risk are listed below, along with applicable requirements:

(a) Shock current Shock current arising from contact with parts that are live in normal service (direct contact) and contact with parts that become live under fault conditions (indirect contact). NOTES:

1 A 'shock current' is an electric current of sufficient magnitude and duration to cause an electric shock. AS/NZS 60479 provides further information on the effects of shock current through the human body.

2 Protection under normal conditions, designated as 'basic protection' (direct contact) is defined in Clause 1.4.97.

3 Protection under fault conditions, designated as 'fault protection' (indirect contact) is defined in Clause 1.4.98.

(b) Excessive temperatures Excessive temperatures likely to cause burns, fires and other damaging effects.

Persons, fixed equipment, and fixed materials adjacent to electrical

equipment shall be protected against harmful effects of heat developed by electrical equipment, or thermal radiation, particularly the following effects:

(i) Combustion or degradation of materials.

(ii) Risk of burns.

(iii) Impairment of the safe function of installed equipment.

(c) Explosive atmospheres Equipment installed in areas where explosive gases or dusts may be present shall provide protection against the ignition of such gases or dusts.

13.If a "touch voltage" exceeds certain values a protective device must disconnect the supply. What are the limits of "touch voltage"?

#### 1.5.5.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply

The following applies:

(a) Automatic disconnection of supply is intended to limit the prospective touch voltage arising between simultaneously accessible conductive parts in the event of a fault between a live part and exposed conductive parts or a protective earthing conductor.

This method of protection shall be achieved by-

(i) provision of a system of equipotential bonding in which exposed conductive parts are connected to a protective earthing conductor; and

(ii) disconnection of the fault by a protective device. NOTES:

1 Automatic disconnection of supply may also be required for protection against overcurrents, in accordance with Clause 1.5.9 and Clause 2.5. 2 Clause 5.6 contains requirements for equipotential bonding.

3 Section 2 contains requirements for the disconnection of a fault by a protective device.

(b) Touch-voltage limits In the event of a fault between a live part and an exposed conductive part that could give rise to a prospective touch voltage exceeding 50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c., a protective device shall automatically disconnect the supply to the circuit or electrical equipment concerned.

NOTE: Lower touch-voltage limits are required for special electrical installations or locations by the relevant clauses of Sections 6 and 7.

14. When protection against indirect contact is provided by automatic disconnection of the supply, what is the maximum disconnection time for –

a)a power circuit with a rating of less than 63A

b)equipment that has only single insulation

c)an electric range

d)a submain

1.5.5.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply
(d) Disconnection times The maximum disconnection time for 230/400 V supply voltage shall not exceed the following:
(i) 0.4 s for final subcircuits that supply-

(A) socket-outlets having rated currents not exceeding 63 A;
 WELCOME
 (B) hand-held Class I equipment; or
 (C) portable equipment intended for manual movement during

(C) portable equipment intended for manual movement during use.

(ii) <mark>5 s for other circuits including submains and final subcircuits supplying fixed or stationary equipment</mark>.

NOTE: Maximum disconnection times will vary for other voltages and installation conditions. Appendix B provides further guidance regarding disconnection times.

15.Using the time-current curves of figure 1, for a duration of 500mS, what zoneswould result for a body current of -

a)20mA-----2

b)200mA-----3 c2

(a)\_ (b)

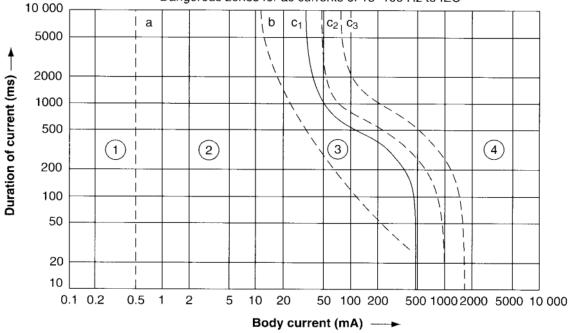
16.Using the time-current curves of figure 1, for a body current of 20mA, identify the zone and the physiological effect that would result for the following time periods –

a)20mS-----2

b)200mS-----2

c)2,000mS----3b

Dangerous zones for ac currents of 15–100 Hz to IEC



To satisfy the design requirements and Clause 1.6 of AS/NZS3000, it is necessary to split the installation into a number of circuits.

Circuits can be classified into 3 broad groups:

- used to connect the entire installation to the street supply at only one point for ease of isolation.

\_\_\_\_\_\_ - used to connect between switchboards;no load is connected directly to this cable.

- used to connect the load to the main switch board or distribution / sub-board.

Consumer main/ Submain / Final sub circuit

Refer to Section 1, Clause 1.6.5 of AS/NZS3000 and complete the following: Every electrical installation shall be divided into circuits as necessary to avoid and minimize in the event of a fault.

Furthermore, installations are divided into circuits to:

□ facilitate <u>safe operation</u>

□ allow full and thorough \_\_\_\_\_\_ inspection \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_testing \_\_\_\_\_\_

□ allow for ongoing repair and \_\_\_\_\_\_<u>maintenance.</u>\_\_\_\_\_.

1.6.5 Electrical installation circuit arrangement

Every electrical installation shall be divided into circuits as necessary to-

(a) avoid danger and minimize inconvenience in the event of a fault; and

(b) facilitate safe operation, inspection, testing and maintenance.

## Exercise 1:

Read Clause 2.2.1.1 and discuss the above list as a class group. Can you determine 2 more examples of what else may need to be considered when designing an installation and separating circuits.

2.2.1.1 General

The electrical installation shall be arranged into an appropriate number of separate circuits taking the following into account:

(a) The relationship of the equipment, including any requirement for

operation as a group and any special need identified by the user.

(b) The load and operating characteristics of the equipment in

relation to the rating of the circuit components.

(c) The limitation of consequences of circuit failure including loss of supply to critical equipment, overload and the ability to locate a fault.

(d) The facility for maintenance work, and capacity for alterations and additions, to be performed without interrupting supply to other parts of the installation.

\* NOTE: Specific design and equipment may need to be considered to ensure the

continuity of supply. For further guidance, refer to Appendix M. Circuits for safety services shall be separate from those used to supply the remainder of the electrical installation, as required by Clause 7.2.2. NOTES: 1 The most common distribution arrangement for a low voltage electrical installation is radial branched distribution, an example of which is shown in Figure B1 (Appendix B). 2 Division of circuits falls logically into several categories, each an individual circuit or group of circuits. Typically, the circuit groups selected are as follows: (a) Lighting. (b) Socket-outlets. (c) Heating and/or airconditioning appliances. (d) Motor-driven plant. (e) Auxiliary services, such as indication and control.

(f) Safety services.

3 Appendix C provides guidance on circuit arrangements for basic applications.

## Exercise 2:

List 6 Load groups that are typically divided into separate final sub-circuits:

- (b) Socket-outlets.
- (c) Heating and/or airconditioning appliances.
- (d) Motor-driven plant.
- (e) Auxiliary services, such as indication and control.
- (f) Safety services.

## Exercise 3:

Which Appendix in AS/NZS3000 can be referred to seek recommended circuit arrangements for basic installations?

□Appendix \_\_\_\_\_. Table 1 in this appendix indicates different load groups

## Appendix C

Once the load is appropriately separated into circuits a suitable circuit protection device and cable can be selected for each circuit. The protection device which is typically a circuit breaker or HRC fuse is selected to allow supply the load and to protect the circuit conductors. For some

-		– 0 ×
C 🔿 G http	r//www.google.com/search?source=hp&ei=qKxuW_3MBoyX8gWm2pbQCQ&q=additional+protection+in+wiring+system&oq=additional 💌 🖴 🖒 Search	P- 价 ☆ <sup>鍛</sup> 🙂
G additional protect		
🚖 Booking.com	TripAdvisor      → Log off     TripAdvisor     → Log off     →	
	https://www.standards.org.au/StandardAU//Wring_Rules_FAQs_March_2010.pdf ▼ Mar 1, 2010 - (e) Compliance with Clause 2.6 on additional protection by RCDs TABLE 3.5 UNDERGROUND WIRING \$YSTEM CATEGORIES. Question You've visited this page 2 times. Last visit: 3/08/18	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	IPPE       AS/NZS 3000:2007 Electrical installations - SAI Global         https://www.saiglobal.com/PDFTemp/Previews/OSH/as/as3000/3000-2007.pdf ▼         Nov 12, 2007 - been separated from other special electrical installations as they are (xvi)         Additional illustrations of the protection of wiring systems near	
	IPDF] AS/ACIF S009:2006 - Communications Alliance     www.commsalliance.com.au/_data/assets/pdf_file/0009/2421/S009_2006r.pdf ▼     Australian Standard - Installation requirements for customer cabling (Wring Rules). This Standard     wasJUNE 2006; (will) protective anthing information amended 20.16.1 Separation from     other earthing systems. 88. 20.16.2 Earth	
	IPPPI managing electrical risks in the workplace - Safe Work Australia https://www.safeworkaustralia.gov.au/system//mcop-managing-electrical-risks in_th • Electrical risks are risks of death, electric shock or other injury caused directly or indirectly protection system within the meaning of AS 2832.1.2004.	
	IPPF AS/NZS 3000:2007 Amendment No. 1 Electrical EPIC ITB www.epicitb.com//AS%20NZS%203000-2007%20Amdt%201-2009%20Electrical% ▼ Feb 8, 2010 - additional protection by RCDs as required in Clause 2.6 shall be provided for To minimize damage to wiring systems installed underground	
	The new Wiring Rules   Department of Mines, Industry Regulation and https://www.commerce.wa.gov.au/energysafety/new-wiring-rules ▼ Jul 16, 2018 - The 2018 edition of AS/NCS 2000/2018, Electrical Installations Topics include RCDs in relation to application, lighting, equipment and more.	
🗄 🔘 Туре	The wiring rules are changing - worksafe.gld.gov.au here to search 🛛 🖟 🖶 🦛 🦏 🛱 🛟 🦃 🔞 🛪 💿 🖬 🖉 🔜 💌 🚺 🍋 🗍 🅐 📌	へ 📾 🗠 🧖 (小) ENG 7:31 PM 🖵
		11/03/2010
		– o ×
File Edit View V	stection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC indow Help	- 5 ×
Home Tool	UEENEEG063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf	? Sign In
B 🔶 🖥		
(L) Ø	S2 – Cct. & Control Arrangement	Export PDF
	Determining the current for load devices can be found using the following:	Adobe Export PDF
~	Single phase appliances Three phase appliances	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
		Select PDF File UEENEEG06ection.pdf X Convert to
		Microsoft Word (*.docx)
•	where I = Current in Amperes I∟ = Line current in Amperes	Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
	V = Voltage in Volts V <sub>L</sub> = Line voltage in Volts	engine (enery energy
	$\lambda$ = power factor $\lambda$ = power factor	Convert
	In circuits with only one point per circuit (designated circuit) this current becomes the maximum demand of the circuit.	🔁 Create PDF 🗸
	Exercise 4:	Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Get Started
	here to search 🛛 📮 📴 🔽 🖊	べ 一 (点 点) ENG 7:32 PM 11/09/2019 □
- iype		11/08/2018



### Exercise 4:

Determine the line current drawn by a 400 Volt, 13 kW three phase air-conditioner operating at a rated power factor of 0.95.

V =	
P =	
λ =	

l = ? \_\_\_\_\_

13000 = 400 l x 0.95 13000
I = = A
400 x 0.95
Exercise 5:
Determine the current drawn by a 230 Volt,
V =
P =
λ =
l = ?
6000

I = ----- = A

230 x 1

#### Exercise 6:

**Refer to Appendix C – Circuit Arrangements** Read the following and complete the exercise below.

□Clause 5.1

Clause 5.2

□Table C8

□ footnotes to Table C8

## C5 NUMBER OF POINTS CONNECTED TO CIRCUITS

C5.1 Number of circuits

Each item of equipment that has a current rating in excess of 20 A per phase should be connected to a separate and distinct circuit. Where more than one item of equipment is to be connected to a circuit, consideration needs to be given to-

(a) the number, distribution and type of equipment (lighting, socket-outlets or appliances, etc.), i.e. points, that are to be supplied in combination;(b) the operating characteristics of the different items of equipment.

6 kW electric cooktop (resistive load)

including seasonal or daily variations;

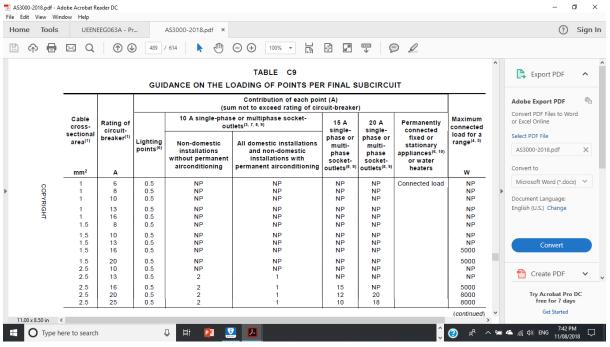
(c) the circuit current under expected operating conditions and the coordination with cable and protective device ratings to minimize the risk of an overload fault; and

(d) the effects of an overload fault on the circuit, including loss of supply to equipment that performs a special function, e.g. security, emergency, medical or critical information and telecommunications purposes.

Paragraph C5.2, together with Table C9, provides a method that has been used over several editions of this Standard and, provided that care is taken to assess the presence of unusual equipment loads, is considered appropriate for many typical applications.

## C5.2 Final subcircuits

Guidance on the determination of the number of socket-outlets, lighting and appliances, i.e. points that may be connected to a final subcircuit, is given in Table C9.



A **Domestic Home** is wired using T.P.S. cable and has the following load items installed: 36 lights (10A C.B.)

- 24 Double 10A Socket Outlets (20A C.B.)
- □1 25A Single Phase Air-conditioner (25A C.B.)
- □1 3.6 kW Hot Water System (16A C.B.)

# Complete the following table:

	the following table:			- 8 ×
Home Tools	UEENEEG063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf			⑦ Sign In
🖹 🕈 🖶 🖻	A Q 💮 🕹 36 / 181 🖡 🤇	ற⊖⊕ 115% -		
С 0	Circuit number Load Type	Protection Device / R (A)	Rating Number of points per circuit	Export PDF
	1			Adobe Export PDF Covert PDF File
	2			UEENEEG06ection.pdf X
4	4			Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) Document Language:
	5			English (U.S.) Change
	6			Convert
	7			Create PDF V
				free for 7 days Get Started
Type here	to search 📮 🛱 📭	2	•	
Circuit	Load Type		Protective device	Number of points per
Number			rating (A)	circuit
	36 lights (10A C.B.)	=		
	36 x 0.5A/Pt= 18A	10 pt and		
	Divide 2 Circuit each	18 pt and		
1 A	current 9A		10A	18
1A 1B	18 lights 18 lights		10A 10A	18
ID	24 Double 10A Soc	kot Outlots	10A	10
	(20A C.B.)	Ket Oullets		
	24x2=48 Pt			
	2A per point			
	Total z x $48 = 96 A$			
	5 Double 10A sock			
2	5 Double 10A sock		20A	5
3	5 Double 10A socket/ circuit		20A	5
4	5 Double 10A sock		20A	5
5	5 Double 10A socket/ circuit		20A	5
6	4 Double 10A sock		20A	4
7	1 x25A Single Phas conditioner (25A C.		25A	1
8	1 x3.6 kW Hot Wate (16A C.B.)	-	16A	1

Lighting points A luminaire is deemed to comprise one or more lighting points,

according to the number of points at which it is connected by flexible cords to the installation wiring, or according to the number of sections in which it is switched or controlled. Connections of festoon lighting and decorative lighting are not regarded as lighting points. See Table C1 for track systems and ELV lighting. A socket-outlet installed more than 2.3 m above a floor for the connection of a luminaire may be included as a lighting point. An appliance rated at not more than 150 W, which is permanently connected, or

connected by means of a socket-outlet installed more than 2.3 m above a floor, may be included as a lighting point.

🗾 UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC ٥ × File Edit View Window Help ? Sign In Home Tools UEENEEG063A - Pr... × AS3000-2018.pdf 🖹 🔶 🖶 🖂 Q, 🗇 🕢 37 / 181 🖡 🖑 🖂 🕀 115% 🔻 🚼 🖉 🕎 💭 🖉 S2 – Cct. & Control Arrangement ß Export PDF Ø Exercise 7: ¢ Refer to figure 4 below of a domestic home and determine how the circuits will be ₿ Adobe Export PDF Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online separated. - J ELECTRICAL LEGEND 11 Select PDF File SINGLE POWER OUTLET SINGLE POWER OUTLET
 DOUBLE POWER OUTLET
 RANGEHOOD & MWAVE GPO
 DISHWASHER GPO Note: UEENEEG06...ection.pdf Ð For light and power Convert to R POINTS FOOR DIRECT CONNECTION TO COOK-TOP & WALL OVEN circuits, list the Q Microsoft Word (\*.docx) WATERPROOF OUTLET
 (EXTERNAL USE) number of points 2x POWER GARAGE METER BOX Document Language D you have grouped English (U.S.) Change H SMOKE DETECTOR together on each CEILING LIGHT b WALL MOUNTED LIGHT circuit. DOWNLIGHT 0 FLUORESCENT LIGHT Х LIGHT SWITCH ÷ TV POINT -0 Create PDF EXHAUST FAN Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Appliance Get Started R Specifications: *信* (13) ENG 8:04 PM 11/08/201 i 📴 Type here to search ۵ U 0 æ **Project Assignment** 

## Exercise 8:

A **Commercial Office** is wired using T.P.S. cable and has the following load items installed:

□43 lights (20A C.B.)

23 10A Socket Outlets (20A C.B.)

Complete the following table

ome Tools	UEENEEG063A - P	AS3000-2018.pc	If			⑦ Sign
ቀ 🖶 🖂		38 / 181	🖑 🕞 🕂 115% 🔻 📙 🗳			
					^	🕒 Export PDF 🔨
	Circuit number	Load Type	Protection Device / Rating (A)	Number of points per circuit		Adobe Export PDF
	1					Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File
	2					UEENEEG06ection.pdf 🗙
•	3				•	Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx)
	4					Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
	5					Convert
	6					💾 Create PDF 🛛 🗸
	7					Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Get Started

#### Do it yourself

#### **CIRCUIT SCHEDULES**

Circuit schedules are used to detail which protection device controls which circuit. Domestic homes usually do not require schedules due to the small number of circuits installed and simply label the switchboard or distribution directly.

– ø ×

In industrial or commercial installations, the number of circuits is increased and schedules are required.

An example is shown in figure 5.

## Installation By: Sparky

Phone: 0414 123 456

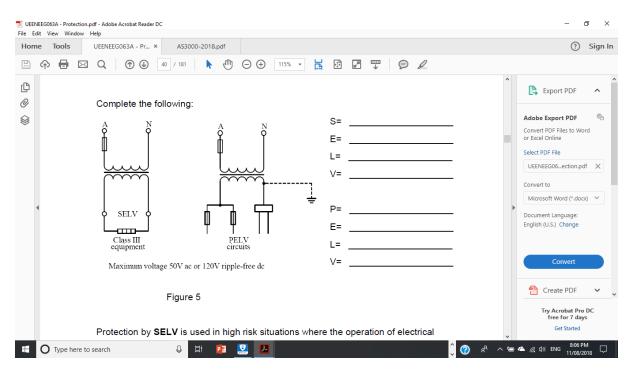
# Sub Board No.: DB1-G1

Fed From: Main Switchboard C.B.10

#### Cable Size: 25mm 4core XLPE + E

UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC File Edit View Window Help

ዮ 🖶	⊠ Q	(	39 / 181 39 / 181 115	% •	Ŀ			
	Pos.	Amps	Designation	Pos.	Amps	Designation	^	Export PDF
	1	32	3 Phase induction Motor – workshop 1	2	20	Power cct 1 - General GPO's front office		E4 Export Di
	3	32	3 Phase induction Motor – workshop 1	4	20	Power cct 2 - General GPO's front office		Adobe Export PDF
	5	32	3 Phase induction Motor – workshop 1	6	20	Power cct 3 – General GPO's workshop 1		
	7	32	3 Phase wall outlet - workshop 1	8	20	Kitchen – Dishwasher GPO		Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
	9	32	3 Phase wall outlet - workshop 1	10	20	Kitchen – Steam Oven GPO		Select PDF File
	11	32	3 Phase wall outlet - workshop 1	12	20	Kitchen – Microwave GPO		
	13	25	10 HP Daikin Air Conditioning Unit No. 01	14	20	Kitchen – Bench GPO's		UEENEEG06ection.pdf
	15	25	10 HP Daikin Air Conditioning Unit No. 01	16	20	Power cct 4 – General GPO's warehouse		Convert to
	17	25	10 HP Daikin Air Conditioning Unit No. 01	18	20	Power cct 2 – General GPO's workshop 2		Microsoft Word (*.docx)
4	19	25	10 HP Daikin Air Conditioning Unit No. 02	20	20	Power cct 1 – General GPO's bathroom	Þ	
	21	25	10 HP Daikin Air Conditioning Unit No. 02	22	20	Lighting cct 1 -front office		Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
	23	25	10 HP Daikin Air Conditioning Unit No. 02	24	10	Lighting cct 2 - kitchen		
	25	20	3 phase Welder – workshop 2	26	10	Lighting cct 3 -bathroom		
	27	20	3 phase Welder – workshop 2	28	20	Lighting cct 4 - warehouse		Convert
	29	20	3 phase Welder – workshop 2	30	20	Lighting cct 5 - workshop 1		convert
	31		Spare	32	20	Lighting cct 6 - workshop 2		-
	33		Spare	34	20	Lighting exterior security		💾 Create PDF 🗸 🗸
	35		Spare	36	20	Security panel – GPO		Try Acrobat Pro DC
	37		Spare	38		Spare		free for 7 days
	39		Spare	40		Spare		Get Started



# 1.5.7 Basic and fault protection by use of extra-low voltage

Separated extra-low voltage (SELV) or protected extra-low voltage (PELV) Refer to Clause 1.5.7

Separated extra-low voltage (SELV) or protected extra-low voltage (PELV) systems may be used to provide both basic and fault protection subject to the following: a)The nominal voltage shall not be capable of exceeding the limits for

\_\_\_\_\_ (50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c.) and the source of supplyis arranged so that it cannot exceed these values.

b)Circuits shall be electrically \_\_\_\_\_\_ from each other and from circuits at \_\_\_\_\_\_ voltages.

c)Live parts of SELV circuits shall not be connected to \_\_\_\_\_\_ or to protectiveearthing conductors that are part of other circuits or to other live parts.
 d)Live parts of PELV circuits shall be protected from direct contact by \_\_\_\_\_\_

unless the voltage does not exceed 25 V a.c. or 60 V ripple-free d.c. in dry areas where a large contact area with the human body is notexpected or 6 V a.c. or 15 V ripple-free d.c. in all other areas.

or

1.5.7 Basic and fault protection by use of extra-low voltage Separated extra-low voltage (SELV) or protected extra-low voltage (PELV) systems may be used to provide both basic and fault protection subject to the following conditions:

(a) The nominal voltage shall not be capable of exceeding the limits for extra-low voltage (50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c.) and the source of supply is arranged so that it cannot exceed these values.

(b) Circuits shall be electrically segregated from each other and from circuits at higher voltages.

(c) Live parts of SELV circuits shall not be connected to earth or to protective earthing conductors that are part of other circuits or to other live parts.

(d) Live parts of PELV circuits shall be protected from direct contact by

barriers or insulation unless the voltage does not exceed 25 V a.c. or 60 V ripple-free d.c. in dry areas where a large contact area with the human body is not expected or 6 V a.c. or 15 V ripple-free d.c. in all other areas.

Refer to Section 7: clause \_\_\_\_\_\_ Sources of supply by SELV and PELV The source supplying an SELV or a PELV system shall be one of the following: (a) A \_\_\_\_\_\_ complying with AS/NZS 61558. (b) A source of current independent of a higher voltage supply, such as an engine-driven \_\_\_\_\_\_, or an electrochemical source, such as a \_\_\_\_\_\_. (c) A source of current separated from higher voltage electrical installations, such as a motor-generator set, with electrically separate windings having a degree of electrical separation equivalent to that required by Item (a). (d) Certain electronic devices complying with appropriate Standards.

7.5.3 Sources of supply to SELV and PELV systems

The source supplying a SELV or PELV system shall be one of the following: (a) A safety isolating transformer complying with AS/NZS 61558.

(b) A source of current independent of a higher voltage supply, such as an engine-driven generator, or an electrochemical source, such as a battery.

(c) A source of current separated from higher voltage electrical installations, such as a motor-generator set, with electrically separate windings having a degree of electrical separation equivalent to that specified by Item (a).

(d) Certain electronic devices complying with appropriate Standards, where, in the case of an internal fault, the voltage at the output terminals cannot exceed extra-low voltage. Higher voltages at the output terminals may be used, provided that the voltage at the output terminals is immediately reduced to extra-low voltage if contact is made with live parts under normal or fault conditions. NOTE: Such devices include insulation testing equipment.

**Refer to Section 7: clause** Arrangement of **SELV** circuits Live parts of SELV circuits shall not be connected to earth or protective earthing conductors that are part of other circuits or to other live parts.

Class III equipment (clause 1.4.29) may only be connected to and supplied by a SELV system that will not supply circuit equipment any higher than ELV (max. 50V ac or 120V ripple free dc)

SELV circuits shall not be connected to-

•			

- □ \_\_\_\_\_
- □ \_\_\_\_\_

7.5.5 Arrangement of SELV circuits

Live parts of SELV circuits shall not be connected to earth or protective earthing conductors that are part of other circuits or to other live parts. SELV circuits shall not be connected to-

(a) other circuits;

(b) earth;

(c) earthing conductors or exposed conductive parts of another system; or(d) extraneous conductive parts.

Exception: Connection to extraneous conductive parts may be made where electrical equipment is inherently required to be so connected and it is ensured that the extraneous conductive parts cannot attain a voltage exceeding that of the SELV circuit.

Refer to Section 7: **clause** \_\_\_\_\_\_ Arrangement of **PELV** circuits The following applies for PELV circuits, where one conductor of the output circuit is earthed.

Basic protection shall be provided by-

(a) \_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ affording the degree of protection at least IPXXB or IP2X

(b) insulation capable of withstanding a test voltage of 500 V a.c. for 1min. *Note: There are exceptions to this clause.* 

7.5.6 Arrangement of PELV circuits

The following applies for PELV circuits, where one conductor of the output circuit is earthed.

Basic protection shall be provided by-

(a) barriers or enclosures affording a degree of protection of at least IPXXB or IP2X; or

(b) insulation capable of withstanding a test voltage of 500 V a.c. for 1 min.

Exception: Basic protection shall be deemed unnecessary if electrical equipment is within the zone of influence of equipotential bonding and the nominal voltage does not exceed-

1 25 V a.c. or 60 V ripple-free d.c., when electrical equipment is normally used in a dry location only and large-area contact with the human body is not to be expected; or 2.6 V as a set 15 V minute free days in all other areas

2 6 V a.c. or 15 V ripple-free d.c., in all other cases.

Refer to the following clauses and complete exercise 9: Clause 7.5.7 to 7.5.11

# Exercise 9

□Voltage drop at any point in an extra-low voltage electrical installation shall not exceed \_\_\_\_\_% of the nominal value at IFL unless the equipment is designed for such operation.

□The supply to an extra-low voltage electrical installation shall be controlled by a \_\_\_\_\_\_ or switches operating in all unearthed conductors, unless it is fed from a LV supply where a main switch will disconnect supply.

Every extra-low voltage circuit shall be individually protected at its origin against overload and short-circuit currents by a protective device that complies with clauses \_\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. List the 3 requirements that plug and socket-outlet devices, including installation couplers, need to comply to when used for SELV and PELV circuits:

a)\_\_\_\_\_

b)\_\_\_\_\_ c)\_\_\_\_\_ Conductors and insulation of cables used for extra-low voltage electrical installations shall be \_\_\_\_\_\_ for the intended purpose. 7.5.7 Voltage drop in conductors The drop in voltage at any point in an extra-low voltage electrical installation shall not exceed 10% of the nominal value when all live conductors are carrying the circuit-operating current. 7.5.8 Control of an electrical installation 7.5.8.1 Main switches The supply to an extra-low voltage electrical installation shall be controlled by a main switch or switches operating in all unearthed conductors. 7.5.9 Overcurrent protection 7.5.9.1 General Every extra-low voltage circuit shall be individually protected at its origin against overload and short-circuit currents by a protective device that-(a) shall comply with the applicable requirements of Clauses 2.2 and 2.5; and (b) may be provided in one conductor less than the number of conductors 7.5.10 Connecting devices Plug and socket-outlet devices, including installation couplers, for SELV and PELV shall comply with the following: (a) Plugs shall not be able to enter sockets of other voltage systems. (b) Sockets shall not accept plugs of other voltage systems. (c) Sockets shall not have a contact for a protective earthing conductor in the circuit. Protection by electrical separation shall be compliant with Clauses 7.4.2 to 7.4.4, and (a) Clause 7.4.5 for a supply to \_\_\_\_\_; or (b) Clause 7.4.6 for a supply to \_\_\_\_\_\_ item of equipment with-7.4.5 Supply to single item of electrical equipment 7.4.6 Supply to multiple items of electrical equipment **Refer to Clause 7.4.3 –** Arrangement of circuits Separated circuits shall comply with the following requirements: (a) Circuit voltage shall not exceed \_\_\_\_\_ V. (b) All live parts of a separated circuit shall be reliably and effectively electrically from all other circuits, including other separated circuits and earth. (c) Exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment supplied by a separated circuit shall not be connected to the protective earthing conductor, or the exposed

conductive parts, of the source of supply.

(d) Cables and supply flexible cords to electrical equipment shall be protected against mechanical damage or otherwise arranged to ensure that any damage that might occur is readily visible.

# 7.4.3 Arrangement of circuits

Separated circuits shall comply with the following requirements:

- (a) Circuit voltage shall not exceed 500 V.
- (b) All live parts of a separated circuit shall be reliably and effectively electrically separated from all other circuits, including other separated
  - circuits and earth.

Refer to Clause 7.4.5 - Single item of electrical equipment Where a separated circuit supplies a single item of electrical equipment, any exposed conductive parts of the electrical equipment shall \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ parts of any other circuit, including other separated circuits or earth.

7.4.5 Supply to single item of electrical equipment

Where a separated circuit supplies a single item of electrical equipment, any exposed conductive parts of the electrical equipment shall not be connected to the exposed conductive parts of any other circuit, including other separated circuits or earth

Refer to Clause 7.4.6 - Multiple items of electrical equipment

Where a separated circuit supplies more than one item of electrical equipment, the following shall apply:

(a) Any exposed conductive parts of the separated circuit shall be connected together by an insulated equipotential bonding conductor that is not connected to:

□a \_\_\_\_\_ conductor or exposed conductive parts of

another circuit, including another separated circuit; or any \_\_\_\_\_

7.4.6 Supply to multiple items of electrical equipment

Where a separated circuit supplies more than one item of electrical equipment, the following requirements apply:

(a) Any exposed conductive parts of the separated circuit shall be connected together by an insulated equipotential bonding conductor that is not connected to-

(i)earth;

(ii) a protective earthing conductor or exposed conductive parts of another circuit, including another separated circuit; or (iii) any extraneous conductive parts.

The designated earthing contact of any socket-outlet installed on the separated circuit shall be connected to the \_\_\_\_\_\_ conductor.

The designated earthing contact of any socket-outlet installed on the separated circuit shall be connected to the equipotential bonding conductor.

Exposed conductive parts of the \_\_\_\_\_\_ that are earthed, shall not be simultaneously accessible with any \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the separated circuit. Exposed conductive parts of the source of supply that are earthed, shall not be simultaneously accessible with any exposed conductive part of the separated circuit.

A protective device shall operate to disconnect the separated circuit automatically in the event of two faults resulting in exposed conductive parts being connected to live parts of different polarity. If the protective device is a circuit-breaker, the protective.

## CONTROL OF ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS AND CIRCUITS

The term 'control' as applied to electrical installations can be defined in a number of ways. There are control requirements for:

2.3.1 General

Electrical installations shall be provided with devices to prevent or remove hazards associated with the electrical installation and for maintenance of electrically activated equipment.

NOTE: The measures specified in this Clause (Clause 2.3) are in addition to, and not alternatives to, the protective measures specified in Clause 2.4. Electrical installations shall include all switching devices or other means of disconnection necessary to enable operations, repairs and maintenance work to be carried out safely.

The supply to an extra-low voltage electrical installation shall be controlled by a main switch or switches operating in all unearthed conductors. Control of an entire installation or part thereof, may be required for a number of reasons. These include:

Isolation of the installation\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_emergency reasons\_\_(fire, machine safety,etc)\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_maintenence\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_functional control\_\_\_(machines, appliances)\_\_\_\_

2.3 CONTROL OF ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

## 2.3.1 General

Electrical installations shall be provided with devices to prevent or remove hazards associated with the electrical installation and for maintenance of electrically activated equipment. NOTE: The measures specified in this Clause (Clause 2.3) are in addition to, and not alternatives to, the protective measures specified in Clause 2.4. Electrical installations shall include all switching devices or other means of disconnection necessary to enable operations, repairs and maintenance work to be carried out safely. Any device provided shall comply with the relevant requirements of this Clause (Clause 2.3), in accordance with the intended function or functions. Such devices are classified according to one of the following functions: (a) Isolation, in accordance with Clause 2.3.2.2. (b) Emergency, in accordance with Clause 2.3.5.2. (c) Mechanical maintenance, in accordance with Clause 2.3.6.2. (d) Functional (control), in accordance with Clause 2.3.7.2.

Control and isolation of installations and circuits is commonly provided by the installation of the following devices:

□\_\_\_\_\_ □\_\_\_\_\_

# Main Switch Circuit Breaker Fuse

Which section of AS/NZS3000 sets out the requirements for general arrangement, control and protection of electrical installations?

2.1 GENERAL

2.1.1 Application

This Section specifies the minimum requirements for the selection and installation of switchgear and control gear that shall be achieved to satisfy Part 1 of this Standard.

2.1.2 Selection and installation

When selected devices for control of installations and circuits, consideration needs to be given to suitability of the device, including:

Switchgear and control gear shall be selected and installed to perform

the following functions or have the following features: (a) Provide control or isolation of the electric al installation, circuits or individual items of apparatus as required for maintenance. testing, fault detection or repair. (b) Enable automatic disconnection of supply in the event of an overload, short-circuit or excess earth leakage current in the protected part of the electrical installation. (c) Provide protection of the electrical installation against failure from overvoltage or undervoltage conditions. (d) Provide for switchgear and control gear to be grouped and interconnected on switchboards, enclosed against external influences, and located in accessible positions. (e) Separately control and protect the circuit arrangements without affecting the reliability of supply to, or failure of, other parts of the installation. \* (f) Installed in accordance with the requirements of this Section, and the additional requirements as specified in the manufacturer's instructions.

Refer to definitions: **Clause 1.4.62** – Isolation (isolating function) Isolation is a function intended to cut off the supply from:

□\_\_\_\_\_ or,

□\_\_\_\_\_,

by separating it from every source of electrical energy for reasons of safety

## 1.4.75 Isolation (Isolating function)

Function intended to cut off the supply from the whole installation, or a discrete section of it, by separating it from every source of electrical energy

for reasons of safety.

Refer to definitions: **Clause 1.5.2** – Control and Isolation Electrical installations shall be provided with control and isolation devices to prevent or remove:

\_\_\_\_\_ and to allow

1.5.2 Control and isolation

Electrical installations shall be provided with control and isolation devices to prevent or remove hazards associated with the electrical installation and to allow maintenance of electrical equipment.

The control of **safety services** shall be arranged so that the control devices are:

The control of safety services shall be arranged so that the control devices

are separate from the control of other equipment and are not unintentionally interrupted by the operation of other equipment.

An isolation device shall interrupt all:

An isolation device shall interrupt all active conductors and may be required to operate in a neutral conductor.

NOTE: Clause 2.3.2.1.1 contains requirements for the operation of isolation devices in neutral conductors.

An isolation device or switch **shall not** interrupt:

□\_\_\_\_\_ Or

An isolation device or switch shall not interrupt an earthing conductor or a combined protective earthing and neutral (PEN) conductor

#### Refer to Clause 2.1.2 – Selection and Installation

Switchgear and control gear shall be selected and installed to perform the following functions:

(a) Provide \_\_\_\_\_\_or \_\_\_\_\_ of the electrical installation, circuits or individual items of apparatus as required for maintenance, testing, fault detection or repair.

detection or repair.
(b) Enable \_\_\_\_\_\_ disconnection of supply in the event of an overload, short-circuit or excess earth leakage current in the \_\_\_\_\_\_ part of the electrical installation.

(c) Provide \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the electrical installation against failure from \_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_\_ conditions.

(d) Provide for switchgear and control gear to be \_\_\_\_\_\_ and interconnected on\_\_\_\_\_, enclosed against external influences, and located in accessible positions.

(e) \_\_\_\_\_\_ control and protect the circuit arrangements without affecting the reliability of supply to, or failure of, other parts of the installation.

2.1.2 Selection and installation

Switchgear and controlgear shall be selected and installed to perform the following functions or have the following features:

(a) Provide control or isolation of the electric al installation, circuits or individual items of apparatus as required for maintenance, testing. fault detection or repair.

(b) Enable automatic disconnection of supply in the event of an

overload, short-circuit or excess earth leakage current in the protected part of the electrical installation.

(c) Provide protection of the electrical installation against failure from overvoltage or undervoltage conditions.

(d) Provide for switchgear and controlgear to be grouped and interconnected on switchboards, enclosed against external influences, and located in accessible positions.

(e) Separately control and protect the circuit arrangements without affecting the reliability of supply to, or failure of, other parts of

the installation.

\* (f) Installed in accordance with the requirements of this Section, and the additional requirements as specified in the manufacturer's instructions.

# **Refer to Clause 2.3 –** Control of Electrical Installation – General

Electrical installations shall be provided with devices to prevent or remove hazards associated with the electrical installation and for maintenance of electrically activated equipment.

Any device provided shall comply with the relevant requirements of Clause 2.3, and for specific purposes, shall comply with the following clauses:

- (a) Isolation: Clause \_\_\_\_\_
- (b) Emergency: Clause \_\_\_\_\_
- (c) Maintenance: Clause \_\_\_\_\_
- (d) Functional Control: Clause \_\_\_\_\_
- (a) Isolation, in accordance with Clause 2.3.2.2.
- (b) Emergency, in accordance with Clause 2.3.5.2.
- (c) Mechanical maintenance, in accordance with Clause 2.3.6.2.
- (d) Functional (control), in accordance with Clause 2.3.7.2.

## Refer to Clause 2.3.2 – Common Requirements

Every circuit shall be capable of being isolated from each of the supply conductors, in accordance with Clause \_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.

□ Provided that the service conditions allow and the appropriate safety measures are maintained, a \_\_\_\_\_\_ may be isolated by a \_\_\_\_\_\_ switch.

□ Provision shall be made to enable isolation of electrical equipment and to prevent electrical equipment from being \_\_\_\_\_\_energized.

2.3.2 Common control requirements

- 2.3.2.1 General
- \* 2.3.2.1.1 All systems

Every circuit shall be capable of being isolated from each of the supply conductors, in accordance with Clause 2.3.2.1.2 or 2.3.2.1.3, as appropriate.

Provided that the service conditions allow it, and the appropriate safety measures are maintained, a group of circuits may be isolated by a common switch.

Provision shall be made to enable isolation of electrical equipment and to prevent electrical equipment from being inadvertently energized. The means of isolation shall be such that a deliberate action in addition to the normal method of operation is required to energize the circuit.

## Exercise 10:

List 3 precautions which may be used to prevent electrical equipment from being inadvertently (accidently) energized.

(a) \_\_\_\_\_

(b) \_\_\_\_\_

(c) \_\_\_\_\_

## 2.3.2.1.1 All systems

(a) Provision for the fitting of a padlock.

(b) Warning tags or notices.

(c) Location within a lockable space or enclosure.

(d) Short-circuiting and earthing may be used as a supplementary measure only.

#### Refer to Clause 2.3.2.1.1 – Alternating Current Systems:

Read t the requirements of this clause and answer the following: In a 3 phase circuit how many active conductors are required to be switched by the isolation device?

## 3

2.3.2.1.2 Alternating current systems

Provisions for isolation of conductors in a.c. systems are as follows: (a) Active conductors All active conductors of an a.c. circuit shall be capable of being isolated by a device for isolation.

May an isolation device be placed in the neutral of a consumer's main or a P.E.N. conductor?

#### No

2.3.2.1.2 Alternating current systems

Provisions for isolation of conductors in a.c. systems are as follows: (a) Active conductors All active conductors of an a.c. circuit shall be capable of being isolated by a device for isolation.

(b) Neutral conductor:

(i) No switch or circuit-breaker shall be inserted in the neutral conductor-

(A) of consumer mains; or

(B) where the neutral conductor is used as a combined

protective earthing and neutral (PEN) conductor for

protective earthing of any portion of an electrical installation.

Are there any exceptions that would allow the neutral of a consumer's main neutral or a P.E.N. conductor to be switched or isolated? (ii) A switch or circuit-breaker may operate in the neutral conductor of circuits other than those in Item (i) where-(A) the neutral pole of a multi-pole switch or circuit-breaker, having an appropriate short-circuit breaking and making capacity, is linked and arranged to switch substantially

together with all active poles; or

(B) the switch or circuit-breaker is linked with corresponding switches so that the neutral contact cannot remain open

when the active contacts are closed. A switched neutral pole shall not open before and shall not close after the active pole(s).

May an isolation device be placed in a circuit other than in a consumer's mainneutral or a P.E.N. conductor?

Yes

2.3.2.1.2 Alternating current systems

Provisions for isolation of conductors in a.c. systems are as follows: (a) Active conductors All active conductors of an a.c. circuit shall be capable of being isolated by a device for isolation.

As discussed earlier, is permitted to switch an earthing conductor or PEN?

## **Refer to Clause 2.3.2.1.2 –** Direct Current Systems:

Common DC systems include the output of Photo-Voltaic (PV) systems, Extra Low Voltage systems, battery backup systems, some machine control circuits and the like. Read the requirements of this clause and answer the following: In a d.c. circuit how many conductors are required to be switched by the isolation device?

how many conductors are required to be switched by the isolation device if it is installed in an Extra Low Voltage (ELV) or a circuit where one pole is connected to earth?

2.3.2.1.3 Direct current systems

\* All conductors of a d.c. circuit shall be capable of being isolated by a device

for isolation. 2

## Refer to Clause 2.3.2.2.1 – Devices for Isolation

Devices for isolation shall effectively isolate all active supply conductors from the circuit. A semiconductor (solid-state) device shall **not** be used for isolation purposes. A solid-state device is \_\_\_\_\_\_

Read the Requirements of this clause and answer the following: What do the symbols "O" and "I" indicate? 2. 3. 2. 2. 1 General The symbols '0' (0FF) and 'I' (0N)

Should an isolation device be readily available / accessible  $\ensuremath{ \frac{\text{Yes}}{\text{Yes}}}$ 

(f) shall be readily available.

(c) shall clearly and reliably indicate the isolating position of the device

What current should the isolation device be able to safely interrupt?

2.3.4.1 Electrical installation in an outbuilding

An electrical installation in an outbuilding shall comply with the following: (a) General An electrical installation in an outbuilding shall be treated as a separate electrical installation if it-

(i) has a maximum demand of 100 A or more per phase; and

(ii) is provided with a switchboard.

2.3.4.2 Submains and final subcircuits greater than 100 A

Every submain and final subcircuit having a rating exceeding 100 A per phase shall be controlled by a separate isolating switch on the switchboard at which the circuit originates.

# Refer to Clause 2.3.3.1 - General (Main Switches)

The supply to every electrical installation shall be controlled on the main switchboard by a main switch or switches that control the whole of the electrical installation. Where multiple supplies are provided, each supply shall be controlled by a main switch or switches on the main switchboard for each supply.

How should Main switches be identified?

Main switches shall be located, arranged and legibly and permanently identified, in accordance with Clauses 2.3.3.3 to 2.3.3.5, to allow for their effective operation in an emergency.

2.3.3.5 Identification

Main switches shall be identified as follows:

(a) Each main switch shall be marked 'MAIN SWITCH' and shall be readily distinguishable from other switchgear by means of grouping, contrasting colouring or other suitable means to provide for prompt operation in an emergency.

(b) Where there is more than one main switch, each main switch shall be marked to indicate the electrical installation or portion of the electrical installation it controls.

(c) Where the opening of a main switch brings into operation or isolates an alternative supply, a notice shall be provided to indicate the position of the main switch controlling the alternative supply. Where supply is provided at more than one point in any building, a prominent notice shall be provided at each main switchboard, indicating the presence of other supplies and the location of other

main switchboards.

\* (e) Main switches for supplementary or alternative supplies shall be labelled to indicate the energy source.

What are the requirements for Main switches supplying safety services? Each part of an electrical installation supplying a safety service in accordance with Clause 7.2 shall be controlled by a main switch or switches, separate from those used to control the remainder of the electrical installation, as required by Clause 7.2.3.

7.2.3 Main switchboard and switchgear

7.2.3.1 General

A safety service shall be controlled by a main switch that is separate from main switches used to control-

(a) any part of the general electrical installation; and

(b) other types of safety services

Refer to Clause 2.3.3.2 – Number of Main Switches

What is the maximum number of main switches permitted in a domestic installation?

2.3.3.3 Number of main switches

The number of main switches shall be kept to the minimum practicable to provide for effective operation in an emergency.

Domestic electrical installations, including each separate domestic electrical installation forming part of a multiple electrical installation, shall

be provided with not more than one main switch for-

(a) each separately metered supply; or

(b) where there is more than one separately controlled supply from a meter, a main switch for each of the separately controlled supplies.

How many main switches would be required if a domestic installation had off-peak? One

A block of 3 units has 3 meters, 1 per unit, and a 4th meter for common lighting. How many main switches will be on the Main Switchboard

# 4

(b) where there is more than one separately controlled supply from a meter, a main switch for each of the separately controlled supplies.

## Refer to Clause 2.3.3.3 - Location

In general, main switches shall be:

, and located;

□\_\_\_\_\_.

In multiple installations such as living units, flats etc, each occupier shall have:

(b) Main switches:

(i) General A main or isolating switch or switches shall be installed on the switchboard in the outbuilding to control the electrical installation in the outbuilding.

## Main switch

Refer to Clause 2.3.3.4 - Identification

Main switches shall be:

Be readily\_\_\_\_\_

Marked to indicate\_\_\_\_\_

□ If the operation of a main switch brings in to function an alternate supply,the alternate supply main switch location shall be \_\_\_\_\_\_

#### 2.3.3.5 Identification

Main switches shall be identified as follows:

(a) Each main switch shall be marked 'MAIN SWITCH' and shall be readily distinguishable from other switchgear by means of grouping, contrasting colouring or other suitable means to provide for prompt operation in an emergency.

(b) Where there is more than one main switch, each main switch shall be marked to indicate the electrical installation or portion of the electrical installation it controls.

(c) Where the opening of a main switch brings into operation or isolates an alternative supply, a notice shall be provided to indicate the position of the main switch controlling the alternative supply.

#### **Refer to Clause 7.2 –** Safety Services

The requirements of clause 7.2.1.1 – General, are to ensure that:

from electrical equipment that is

required to operate;

for which there is no alternate

supply.

These requirements are intended to ensure that electricity supply is not inadvertently disconnected from electrical equipment that is required to operate during emergency conditions

## 7.2.1.1 Scope

The particular requirements of this Clause (Clause 7.2) apply to the electrical installation of building services that are essential for the safe operation of safety services consisting of fire detection, warning and extinguishing systems, smoke control systems, evacuation systems and the safety of persons using lifts.

## 7.2.2.3 Alternative supply systems

7.2.2.3.1 Continued occupation

Where an alternative supply is provided for continued safe occupation of the building, the following requirements apply:

(a) Safety services The alternative supply system shall have sufficient capacity to operate all safety services.

(b) Continued occupation of any portion of the building (during loss of normal supply) The alternative supply system shall have sufficient

# capacity to supply electrical equipment associated with the continued occupation of the building.

## Exercise 11:

Read clauses 7.2.1.2 and 7.2.1.3 and list 6 types of safety service that would be separate from one and other and controlled by their own main switch:

5 Fire detection, alarm and intercom systems with battery backup complying with AS 1670 or NZS 4512.

6 Smoke alarms installed in single private residences (see Clause 4.6 for information relating to smoke alarms).

# Exercise 12:

Read clause 2.3.6.1 and answer the following: List 2 types of injury that may occur if equipment is not shut down and isolated:

Π

Means of disconnecting electricity supply (shutting down) shall be provided where mechanical maintenance of electrically powered equipment might involve a risk of physical injury. NOTES:

1 Such injuries include burns and those caused by radiated heat and unexpected mechanical movements.

2 Electrically powered mechanical equipment may include rotating machines, heating elements and electromagnetic equipment.

3 Examples of electrical installations where means of shutting down for mechanical maintenance are used include cranes, lifts, escalators, conveyors, machine tools and pumps.

4 Systems powered by other means, e.g. pneumatic, hydraulic or steam, are not within the scope of this Clause. In such cases, shutting down any associated supply of electricity may not be sufficient to ensure safety. List 6 Examples of electrical installations where means of shutting down for mechanical maintenance are used:

- (b) Conveyors.
- (c) Groups of machines.
- (d) Pumping facilities for flammable liquids.
- (e) Ventilation systems.
- (f) Certain large buildings, e.g. department stores.
- (g) Electrical testing and research facilities.
- (h) Boiler rooms.
- (i) Large kitchens.

#### Refer to Clause 2.3.6.2 - Devices for Shutting Down

Devices for shutting down for mechanical maintenance shall:

- (a) require \_\_\_\_\_ operation; and
- (b) clearly and reliably indicate the '\_\_\_\_' position; and

(c) be \_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ so as to prevent \_\_\_\_\_\_

#### 2.3.6.2 Devices for shutting down

Devices for shutting down for mechanical maintenance shall-

- (a) require manual operation; and
- (b) clearly and reliably indicate the 'OFF' position; and
- (c) be designed or installed so as to prevent unintentional closure.

#### Refer to Clause 2.3.6.3 - Installation

Devices for shutting down for mechanical maintenance shall be inserted in the main circuit.

Where switches are provided for this purpose they shall be capable of interrupting the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the relevant part of the electrical installation.

#### 2.3.6.3 Installation

Devices for shutting down for mechanical maintenance shall be inserted in the main circuit

Where switches are provided for this purpose, they shall be capable of interrupting the full-load current of the relevant part of the electrical installation. They need not interrupt all live conductors

#### Refer to Clause 2.3.6.4 - Identification

Devices for shutting down for mechanical maintenance shall be placed and marked so as to be \_\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ for their intended use.

# 2.3.6.4 Identification

Devices for shutting down for mechanical maintenance shall be placed and marked so as to be readily identifiable and convenient for their intended use.

#### **Refer to Clause 4.13.1.1** – Switching Devices (for motors)

Isolation switches in motor circuits are installed to provide protection against injury from mechanical movement.

Every motor shall be provided with a switching device capable of:

(a) starting and stopping the motor; and

(b) emergency stopping, in accordance with Clause 2.3.5; and

(c)

An isolating switch is only required for motors rated above \_\_\_\_\_.

4.13.1.1 Switching devices

Every motor shall be provided with a switching device capable of performing all of the following functions:

(a) Starting and stopping the motor.

(b) Emergency stopping, in accordance with Clause 2.3.5.

(c) Isolating the motor for mechanical maintenance, in accordance with Clause 2.3.6.

#### **Refer to Clause 4.13.1.2** – Rating of Switches (for motors)

Isolating switches for motors shall have a rating of not less than:

(a) the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the motor when installed directly in the motor supply circuit: or

(c) the \_\_\_\_\_\_ when installed in the motor-starter circuit.

The isolating switch shall have a rating of not less than-

(d) the full-load current of the motor when installed directly in the motor supply

circuit: or

(b) the control-circuit current when installed in the motor-starter circuit.

AS/NZS 3000 default values used to determine locked rotor current are:

the full load current for A.C. motors

the full load current for D.C. motors

(i) eight times the full-load current for a.c. motors; or

(ii) four times the full-load current for d.c. motors

## FUNCTIONAL CONTROL SWITCHES

Functional switching is required for \_\_\_\_\_\_ only and not for safety reasons. Functional switches do not necessarily provide isolation of electrical equipment, but merely a way to control or operate it. Functional switching devices may be:

Switches

□Semiconductor devices

□Contactors
2.3.7 Functional (control) switching
2.3.7 Functional (control) switching
functional switching may be used where switching of electrical equipment,
or part of an electrical installation, is required for operational control
only
and not for safety reasons.

**Refer to Clause 4.7.1** –Switching device (Cooking Appliances) A circuit for a fixed or stationary cooking appliance having an open cooking surface incorporating electric heating elements, such as Cooktops

□deep fat fryer

□barbecue griddle etc;

shall be provided with a switch, operating in \_\_\_\_\_\_ active conductors, mounted near the appliance in a visible and \_\_\_\_\_\_ position.

A circuit for a fixed or stationary cooking appliance having an open cooking surface incorporating electric heating, e.g. a cooktop, deep fat fryer, barbecue griddle or similar, shall be provided with a switch, operating in all active conductors, mounted near the appliance in a visible and readily accessible position.

A functional switch for a cooktop should be mounted within \_\_\_\_\_ metres of the appliance.

The switch shall not be mounted on the cooking appliance. NOTE: The switch should be mounted within 2 m of the cooking appliance

Does a built in wall oven require a functional switch? \_\_\_\_\_\_ This requirement need not apply to built-in hobs and ovens. No

Does an upright stove require a functional switch? \_\_\_\_\_\_. What recommendation is given for functional switches installed to control domestic appliances? \_\_\_\_\_\_.

# 4.7.1 Switching device

A circuit for a fixed or stationary cooking appliance having an open cooking surface incorporating electric heating, e.g. a cooktop, deep fat fryer, barbecue griddle or similar, shall be provided with a switch, operating in all active conductors, mounted near the appliance in a visible and readily accessible position.

# Page 67

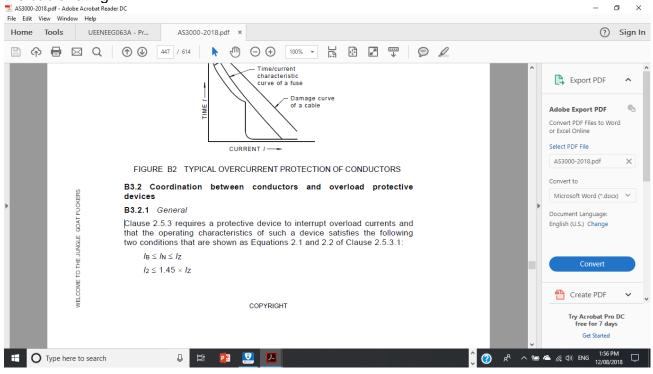
When selecting a circuit breaker for a water heater final sub-circuit, its current rating should be:

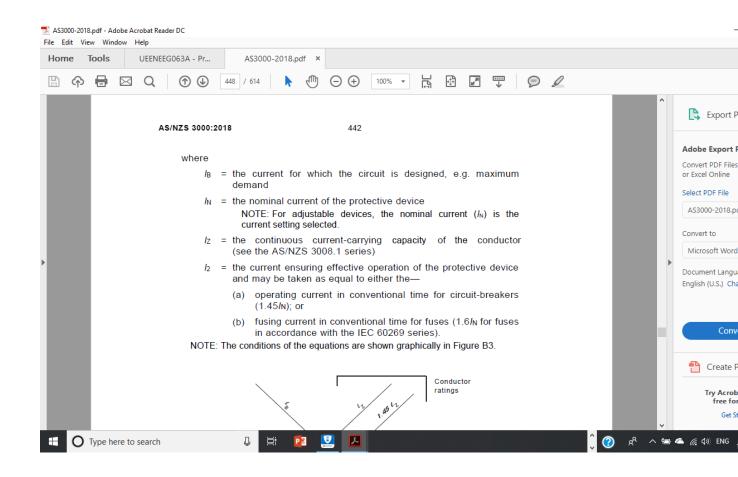
equal to or less than the demand of the final sub-circuit and equal to or less than the cable rating

equal to or greater than the demand of the final sub-circuit and equal to or less than the cable rating

equal to or less than the demand of the final sub-circuit and equal to or greater than the cable rating

equal to or greater than the demand of the final sub-circuit and equal to or greater than the cable rating.





A separate final sub-circuit is recommended for any single point of load exceeding; 16A.

20A. 25A.

32A.

C5 NUMBER OF POINTS CONNECTED TO CIRCUITS

C5.1 Number of circuits

Each item of equipment that has a current rating in excess of 20 A per phase should be connected to a separate and distinct circuit.

The recommended number of lighting points that can be connected to a circuit wired in 1.0 mm<sub>2</sub> TPS cable and protected by a 6A type C circuit breaker in a domestic installation is: 10 12 20 Unlimited

6A / 0.5 = 12 pt

The recommended number of double 10A socket outlets that can be connected to a circuit wired in 2.5 mm<sub>2</sub> TPS cable and protected by a 20A type C circuit breaker in a factory without air conditioning is: 5

#### 10 20 Unlimited

# Double 10A = 20A No 20

ome Tools	UEEN	EEG063A - Pr	r	AS3000-2018.pdf ×							? S	igr
ቀ 🖶	Q	1	489	v 614 📐 🖑	⊖ ⊕ 100% ▼ 🛱	t) M	<u></u>					
			GUII	DANCE ON THE L	TABLE C9 DADING OF POINTS PEF	R FINAL S	UBCIRCU	пт		^	Export PDF	^
				(su	Contribution of each poir m not to exceed rating of circ		.)				Adobe Export PDF	Ð
СОРҮРІСНТ	Cable cross- sectional	Rating of circuit- breaker <sup>(1)</sup>			e or multiphase socket- lets <sup>(3, 7, 8, 9)</sup>	15 A single- phase or	20 A single- phase or	Permanently connected fixed or	Maximum connected load for a		Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online	
	area <sup>(1)</sup> Dreake	Dieaker	Lighting points <sup>(6)</sup>	Non-domestic installations without permanent	All domestic installations and non-domestic installations with	ations multi- multi- lic phase phase h socket- socket-	multi- stationary phase appliances <sup>(6, 10)</sup> socket- or water	range <sup>(4, 5)</sup>		Select PDF File AS3000-2018.pdf	×	
	mm²	Α		airconditioning	permanent airconditioning	outlets <sup>(8, 9)</sup>	outlets <sup>(8, 9)</sup>	heaters	w		Convert to	
	1 1 1	6 8 10	0.5 0.5 0.5	NP NP NP	NP NP NP	NP NP NP	NP NP NP	Connected load	NP NP NP	•	Microsoft Word (*.docx)	~
	1 1 1.5	13 16 8	0.5 0.5 0.5	NP NP NP	NP NP NP	NP NP NP	NP NP NP		NP NP NP		Document Language: English (U.S.) Change	
	1.5 1.5 1.5	10 13 16	0.5 0.5 0.5	NP NP NP	NP NP NP	NP NP NP	NP NP NP		NP NP 5000		Convert	
	1.5 2.5 2.5	20 10 13	0.5 0.5 0.5	NP NP 2	NP NP 1	NP NP NP	NP NP NP		5000 NP NP	-		
	2.5 2.5 2.5	16 20 25	0.5 0.5 0.5	2 2 2	1 1 1	15 12 10	NP 20 18		5000 8000 8000		Try Acrobat Pro DC	×
					•				(continued)	~	free for 7 days Get Started	

The switch used to isolate a 12.5 kW range (cook top and oven) that is connected to two phases and neutral, would have as a minimum:

one pole. two poles. three poles.

four poles

For a single domestic installation, with a maximum demand of less than 100 A, the maximum number of main switches per tariff is

1 6 10 no limit.

# 2.3.4 Additional isolating switches

2.3.4.1 Electrical installation in an outbuilding

An electrical installation in an outbuilding shall comply with the following: (a) General An electrical installation in an outbuilding shall be treated as a separate electrical installation if it-

(i) has a maximum demand of 100 A or more per phase; and

(ii) is provided with a switchboard.

A main switch should be located; as close as possible to the load it isolates. at the main switch board. at the distribution board. point of supply.

2.3.3.2 General

The supply to every electrical installation shall be controlled on the main switchboard by a main switch or switches that control the whole of the electrical installation.

Where multiple supplies are provided, each supply shall be controlled by a main switch or switches on the main switchboard for each supply.

The maximum permissible height for a main switch for a main switch above the ground, a floor or platform is;

0.6m

1.2m

2.0m

2.5m

2.3.3.4 Location and operation

Main switches shall be accessible as follows:

(a) General Main switches shall be readily accessible and the means of operating such switches shall be not more than two metres above the ground, floor or a suitable platform.

It is not permitted to install an isolation switch in; Active conductors Neutral conductors Protective Earthing conductors Switch wires

2.3.2.1.2 Alternating current systems

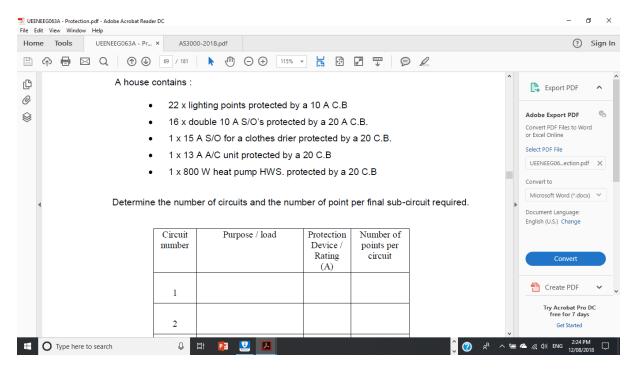
Provisions for isolation of conductors in a.c. systems are as follows: (a) Active conductors All active conductors of an a.c. circuit shall be capable of being isolated by a device for isolation.

(b) Neutral conductor:

(i) No switch or circuit-breaker shall be inserted in the neutral conductor-

Switching of earthing conductor prohibited An earthing conductor shall not be isolated or switched.

2. 3. 2. 1. 2 Alternating current systems(b) A conductor used as a combined protective earthing and neutral (PEN) conductor shall not be isolated or switched



Circuit Number	Purpose/Load	Protection Device Rating A	Number of points per circuit
	22 lighting points 10A CB 10/0.5 = 20 pt Divide two circuit with each 11 Pt	10A	
1	Lighting 1	10A	11 lighting points
2	Lighting 2	10A	11 lighting points
	16 x double 10A SO 20A CB 2A per socket For 20A 10 Pt 32/10 = 3.2 4 Circuits, each 8 pt		
3	10A SO	8	20A
4	10A SO	8	20A
5	10A SO	8	20A
6	10A SO	8	20A
7	1x15A So 20A CB	1	20A
8	1x13A Aircon 20A CB	1	20A
9	1x800W HW 20ACB	1	20A

AS/NZS 3000 defines a SELV wiring system as:

AS/NZS 3000 reference 1.4.105 Separated extra-low voltage (SELV) An extra-low voltage system that is electrically separated from earth and from other systems in such a way that a single fault cannot give rise to the risk of electric shock AS/NZS 3000 defines a PELV wiring system as:

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

1.4.96 Protected extra-low voltage (PELV)

An extra-low voltage system that is not electrically separated from earth, but that otherwise satisfies all the requirements for SELV. The nominal voltage of a SELV or PELV wiring system shall not be capable of exceeding:

\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

1.4.128 Voltage

Differences of potential normally existing between conductors or between conductors and earth as follows:

(a) Extra-low voltage Not exceeding 50 V a. c. or 120 V ripple-free d. c.

(b) Low voltage Exceeding extra-low voltage, but not exceeding 1000 V a.c. or 1500 V d.c.

(c) High voltage Exceeding low voltage.

Can an Extra Low Voltage cable be run in a common conduit with a cable supplied at Low Voltage?

\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

## Yes

3.9.8.2.2 Segregation

\* Where conductors for different electrical installations, or for individual occupancies forming part of single or multiple electrical installations are installed in a common enclosure, they shall be effectively segregated from each other within that enclosure.

3.9.8.3 Segregation of different voltage levels

Cables of high voltage circuits and cables of low or extra-low voltage circuits shall not be enclosed in the same wiring system.

Cables of low voltage circuits and cables of extra-low voltage circuits shall only be enclosed in the same wiring system where one of the following arrangements is employed:

(a) The low voltage cables are of a type providing the equivalent of double insulation.

(b) All cables or each conductor of a multi-core cable are insulated for the highest voltage present.

(c) The low voltage cables are installed in a separate compartment of a common cable trunking system having fixed and continuous barriers between compartment

7.5.5 Arrangement of SELV circuits

Live parts of SELV circuits shall not be connected to earth or protective earthing conductors that are part of other circuits or to other live parts. SELV circuits shall not be connected to-

(a) other circuits;

(b) earth;

(c) earthing conductors or exposed conductive parts of another system; or

(d) extraneous conductive parts.

Exception: Connection to extraneous conductive parts may be made where electrical equipment is inherently required to be so connected and it is ensured that the extraneous conductive parts cannot attain a voltage exceeding that of the SELV circuit.

NOTE: If SELV circuits are liable to come into contact, either fortuitously or intentionally, with the exposed conductive parts of other circuits, protection against electric shock no longer depends solely on protection by SELV but on the protective measure to which the latter exposed conductive parts are subject.

# Page 71

Can an AUTO-TRANSFORMER be used to step down the voltage to supply a SELV or PELV wiring system? Explain your answer.

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

# 4.14.4 Autotransformers

An autotransformer shall not be used to supply electrical equipment, including circuit wiring, having a voltage rating of less than the highest input

or output voltage of the autotransformer.

Unless acceptable by connected ELV equipment, the maximum permissible volt-drop permitted in a ELV wiring system is:

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

7.5.7 Voltage drop in conductors

The drop in voltage at any point in an extra-low voltage electrical installation shall not exceed 10% of the nominal value when all live conductors are carrying the circuit-operating current.

List 4 items that SELV circuits shall NOT be connected to:

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

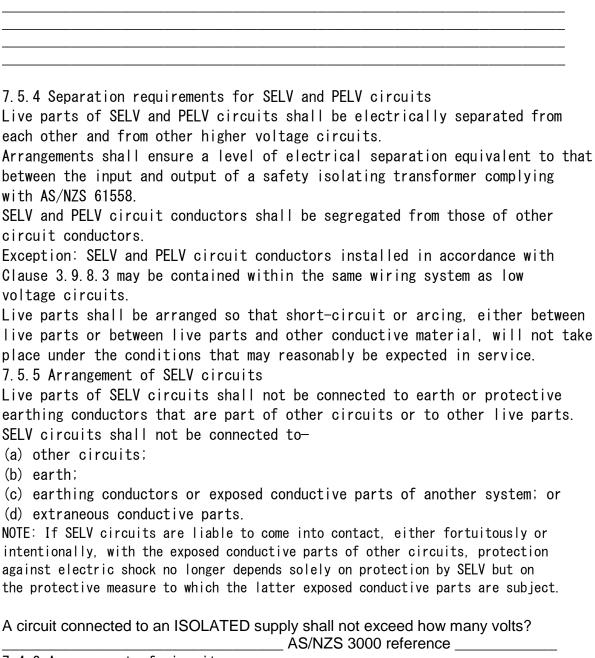
7.5.5 Arrangement of SELV circuits

Live parts of SELV circuits shall not be connected to earth or protective earthing conductors that are part of other circuits or to other live parts. SELV circuits shall not be connected to-

(a) other circuits;

- (b) earth;
- (c) earthing conductors or exposed conductive parts of another system; or
- (d) extraneous conductive parts.

Explain why it is not permitted to connect a protective earthing conductor from a SELV or PELV circuit to the primary of a supply system or any other circuit:



Separated circuits shall comply with the following requirements: (a) Circuit voltage shall not exceed 500 V.

(b) All live parts of a separated circuit shall be reliably and effectively electrically separated from all other circuits, including other separated circuits and earth.

This requirement shall also apply to live parts of relays, contactors and similar electrical equipment installed in the separated circuit. NOTES:

1 This requirement can be satisfied by insulation of the live parts to Class II (double or reinforced insulation) or measures that are equivalent to the input and output transformer winding isolation provisions of AS/NZS 61558.

2 Each separated circuit should comprise a separate cable or wiring system. However, multi-core cables or a common non-conductive wiring enclosure may be used where the segregation requirements of Clause 3.9.8 are satisfied.

(c) Exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment supplied by a separated circuit shall not be connected to the protective earthing conductor, or the exposed conductive parts, of the source of supply.
(d) Cables and supply flexible cords to electrical equipment shall be protected against mechanical damage or otherwise arranged to ensure that any damage that might occur is readily visible.

Can the equipotential bonding conductors connected between socket outlets of an ISOLATED circuit be connected to the equipotential bond of the MEN system? AS/NZS 3000 reference

#### No

7.4.6 Supply to multiple items of electrical equipment

Where a separated circuit supplies more than one item of electrical equipment, the following requirements apply:

(a) Any exposed conductive parts of the separated circuit shall be connected together by an insulated equipotential bonding conductor that is not connected to-

(i)earth;

(b) The designated earthing contact of any socket-outlet installed on the separated circuit shall be connected to the equipotential bonding conductor.

(c) The designated protective earthing conductor in any supply cable or flexible cord to electrical equipment [other than Class II (double or reinforced insulation) equipment] connected to the separated circuit shall be connected to the equipotential bonding conductor.

(d) Exposed conductive parts of the source of supply that are earthed, shall not be simultaneously accessible with any exposed conductive part of the separated circuit.

(e) A protective device shall operate to disconnect the separated circuit automatically in the event of two faults resulting in exposed conductive parts being connected to live parts of different polarity. If the protective device is a circuit-breaker, the protective device shall open in all (i) unearthed conductors substantially together.

List the minimum values of Insulation Resistance that should be expected during the following tests on a circuit connected to an ISOLATED supply:

Between Isolated circuit active conductors andearth:\_\_\_\_\_

Between Isolated circuit equipotential boning conductors and transformer primary earth conductors:

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

7.4.8.1 General

In addition to the testing requirements of Section 8, the separation of each separated circuit (transformer secondary winding or isolated winding generator output) and the wiring to the socket-outlet shall be individually confirmed. Separation shall be verified by a measurement of the insulation resistance

between the separated circuit and-

(a) if a transformer is the source of the separated supply, the transformer primary winding;

- (b) any other wiring;
- (c) any other separated circuit; and
- (d) earth.

Insulation resistance values obtained shall be not less than 1 MOhm, when tested at a voltage of 500 V d.c

NOTE: Where final subcircuits are not of significant length, the insulation resistance of the separated circuit should be significantly greater than 1 MOhm, e.g. with short lengths (say 50 m) of polymeric cable, a value in excess of 50 MOhm would be expected.

List the resistance you would expect to measure between the equipotentially bonded earth pins of multiple socket outlets connected as an ISOLATED circuit:

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

7.4.8.4 Bonding conductor continuity

The resistance of an equipotential bonding conductor for the earth contacts of socket-outlets, or exposed conductive parts connected to the same separated circuit, shall not exceed 0.5 ohm.

An electrical installation has an electric cook top. What are the requirements for the functional switch and in what position must the switch be located?

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_ 4.7 COOKING APPLIANCES 4.7.1 Switching device A circuit for a fixed or stationary cooking appliance having an open cooking surface incorporating electric heating, e.g. a cooktop, deep fat fryer, barbecue griddle or similar, shall be provided with a switch, operating in all active conductors, mounted near the appliance in a visible and readily accessible position.

NOTE: This requirement need not apply to enclosed cooking appliances, such as built-in ovens and microwave ovens.

In Australia only, where the appliance has an open cooking surface incorporating both gas and electric cooking, the switching device shall operate in all live (active and neutral) conductors.

In New Zealand only, where the appliance has an open cooking surface incorporating both gas and electric cooking, the switching device shall operate in all active conductors.

A single switch is permissible for the control of associated cooking appliances that are in the same room.

The switch shall not be mounted on the cooking appliance.

NOTE: The switch should be mounted within 2 m of the cooking appliance.

The switch shall not be mounted in such a position that the user must reach across the open cooking surface to operate it.

Switches for cooking appliances, including the combined gas/electric cooking appliances specified in Clause 4.18.1, shall not be installed in the prohibited location specified in Clause 4.7.3 and Figure 4.17.

Switches shall be marked to identify the appliance controlled.

Exception: Where an electric cooking surface is installed in a public park or other open area, to prevent damage by vandalism, the switch may be installed under a lockable cover that is located so that it is able to be operated as required for servicing and maintenance purposes of the cooking surface.

4.7.2 Connection-New Zealand only

In New Zealand only, a freestanding cooking appliance shall be connected to the electrical installation wiring by a socket-outlet or an installation coupler.

NOTE: This requirement need not apply to built-in hobs and ovens.

\* 4.7.3 Clearance from open cooking surfaces

Socket-outlets and switches shall not be installed in the prohibited location shown in Figure 4.17, on any wall, cupboard or other surface within 150 mm of the edge of an open gas or electric cooking surface, in the area extending from the top of the cooking surface to a range hood, cupboard or ceiling located directly above the cooking surface, or 2.5 m above the floor that is directly below the cooking surface, whichever is the lower.

Can the main switch for a pump that operates the fire sprinkler system in a building, be installed downstream of the general services main switch?

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_

7.2.5.3 Switchgear for fire pumps and fire pump control equipment

Where emergency equipment is required by national building codes, all switchboards that sustain supply to such equipment shall be constructed so that the emergency equipment switchgear is separated from other switchgear by metal partitions designed to minimize the spread of a fault from the other switchgear to the emergency switchgear.

7.2.5.4 Interposing switches for fire pumps and fire pump control equipment

No switch shall be interposed between a main switch and downstream switchboards supplying fire pumps and fire pumps control equipment.

## FAULT PROTECTION (AGAINST INDIRECT CONTACT)

Refer to **clause 1.4.35** - Contact, indirect: Indirect contact is contact with a conductive part which is -

1.4.38 Contact, direct Contact with a conductor or conductive part that is live in normal service (see Figure 1.2 and Clause 1.4.97 Protection, basic).

#### Exercise 1:

List 2 fault conditions that may cause conductive parts of electrical equipment to become 'live' as a result of the fault.

9.

Insulation failure Contact to live part

List 4 electrical items that may cause electric shock as a result of indirect contact.

11.			

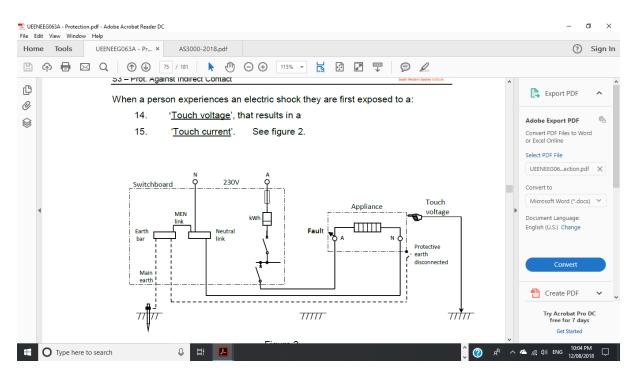
13.			

12.

Electric Iron Range Electric Motor Transformer

Refer to **clause 1.4.78** – Protection, fault:

'Fault Protection' must be provided to protect against -1.4.98 Protection, fault Protection against dangers that may arise from indirect contact with live parts of the installation (contact with an exposed conductive part that is not normally live but has become live under fault conditions) (see Figure 1.3 and Clause 1.4.39 Contact, indirect).



Refer to **clause 1.4.2** - Accessible, readily: The term accessible means –

1.4.2 Accessible

\* Capable of being reached for inspection, maintenance or repairs but does not include the destructive dismantling of structural components.

1.4.3 Accessible, readily

\* Capable of being reached quickly and without climbing over or removing obstructions, or using a movable ladder, and in any case not more than 2.0 m above the ground, floor or platform

Refer to **clause 1.4.95** - Touch voltage: A touch voltage is a voltage –

4.125 Touch voltage
 Voltage appearing between simultaneously accessible parts.
 NOTES:
 1 This term is used only in connection with fault protection.
 2 In certain cases the value of the touch voltage may be appreciably influenced by the impedance of the person or livestock in contact with these parts.

Refer to **clause 1.4.94** - Touch current: A touch current is a current –

1.4.124 Touch current

Electric current that passes through a human body, or an animal body,

when that body touches one or more accessible parts of electrical equipment or an electrical installation, under normal conditions or fault conditions.

Clause 1.5.5 of the wiring rules sets out the requirements for fault protection. Refer to **clause 1.5.5.2** – Methods of protection

Protection against indirect contact may be provided by one or any combination of the following methods -

16.\_\_\_\_\_

17.

18.

19.

1.5.5.2 Methods of protection

Fault protection shall be provided by one or any combination of the following methods:

(a) Automatically disconnect the supply on the occurrence of a fault likely to cause a current flow through a body in contact with exposed

conductive parts, where the value of that current is equal to or greater than the shock current, in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.3.

(b) Prevent a fault current from passing through a body by the use of Class II equipment or equivalent insulation, in accordance with Clause 1, 5, 5, 4,

(c) Prevent a fault current from passing through a body by electrical separation of the system, in accordance with Clause 1, 5, 5, 5,

NOTE: Clause 7.4 provides further guidance on electrical separation.

(d) Limit the fault current that can pass through a body to a value lower than the shock current.

clause 1.5.5.3 (a) – Protection by automatic disconnection of supply

1.5.5.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply The following applies:

(a) Automatic disconnection of supply is intended to limit the prospective touch voltage arising between simultaneously accessible conductive parts in the event of a fault between a live part and exposed conductive parts or a protective earthing conductor. This method of protection shall be achieved by-

(i) provision of a system of equipotential bonding in which exposed conductive parts are connected to a protective earthing conductor; and

(ii) disconnection of the fault by a protective device.

Refer to clause 1.5.5.3 (b) - Touch voltage limits

In the event of a fault between a live part and an exposed conductive part that could give rise to a prospective touch voltage exceeding -28.\_\_\_\_\_

29.\_\_\_

(b) Touch-voltage limits In the event of a fault between a live part and an exposed conductive part that could give rise to a prospective touch voltage exceeding 50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c., a protective device shall automatically disconnect the supply to the circuit or electrical equipment concerned.

Refer to clause 1.5.5.3 (d) - Disconnection times

The maximum disconnection time for 230/400V supply voltage shall not exceed the following -

30. \_\_\_\_\_ seconds for final sub-circuits that supply -

a)socket outlets having rated currents not exceeding 63A

b)hand held class I equipment

c)Portable equipment intended for manual movement during use

31.\_\_\_\_\_ seconds for other circuits including sub-mains and final subcircuitssupplying fixed or stationary equipment.

(d) Disconnection times The maximum disconnection time for 230/400~V supply voltage shall not exceed the following:

(i) 0.4 s for final subcircuits that supply-

(A) socket-outlets having rated currents not exceeding 63 A;

(B) hand-held Class I equipment; or

(C) portable equipment intended for manual movement during use.

Automatic disconnection of the supply relies on a combination of two conditions -32.the provision of a conducting path, known as the "\_\_\_\_\_",to provide for circulation of the fault current; and

33. the interruption of the fault current within the maximum time by an appropriate protection device.

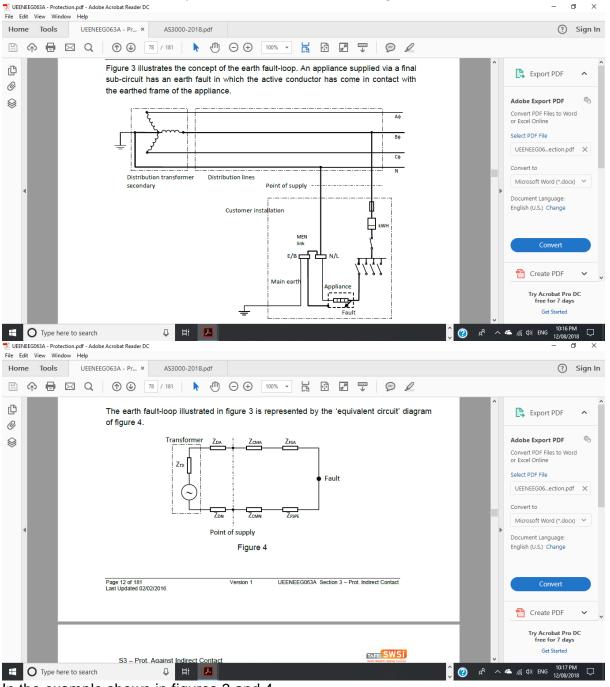
(ii) 5 s for other circuits including submains and final subcircuits supplying fixed or stationary equipment.

Automatic disconnection of the supply relies on a combination of two conditions -32.the provision of a conducting path, known as the "\_\_\_\_earth fault loop ",to provide for circulation of the fault current; and

33. the interruption of the fault current within the maximum time by an appropriate protection device.

Supplementary equipotential bonding Bonding of extraneous conductive parts and their connection to the earthing system may be used to reduce the earth fault-loop impedance, in order to ensure that the disconnection time of the protective device is sufficient to satisfy the requirements of Items (b) to (d) above.

NOTE: This provision does not preclude other measures, such as selection of an alternative protective device that has a lower automatic operating current  $(I_a)$  within the required disconnection time, e.g. an RCD.



In the example shown in figures 3 and 4 -

34. if the touch voltage on the appliance frame rises to a value above \_\_\_\_\_V a.c.the circuit breaker protecting the circuit must operate within the prescribed timeto isolate the faulty circuit. 240V

35. Under fault conditions, the level of current that flows is only limited by the \_\_\_\_\_\_ Earth fault loop resistance\_.

36. To ensure very fast operation of the circuit breaker the current that flows in theearth fault-loop must be \_\_\_\_\_\_high \_\_\_\_\_.

37. Therefore the earth fault-loop impedance must be \_\_\_\_\_low\_\_\_\_to ensure operation of the protective device.

# **15.PROTECTION BY ELECTRICAL SEPARATION**

The general requirements for protection by separation (isolated supply) have beencovered in section 2 of this workbook. Below is a review only of the requirementscovered in section 2 for electrical separation.

Electrical separation can provide protection from the potential hazard that may arise from the rest of the installation. Electrically separating a portion of a system means to electrically isolate it from the main supply grid and MEN system.

This method of protection typically uses a supply from:

38.\_\_\_\_\_ 39.\_\_\_\_

40.

2.5.1.2 Consumer mains

\* Overcurrent protection of consumer mains shall be arranged in accordance with one of the following:

(a) Short-circuit protection and overload protection shall be provided at the origin of the consumer mains (the point of supply) (see Notes 1 and 2).

(b) Short-circuit protection shall be provided at the origin of the consumer mains and overload protection shall be provided at the main switchboard (see Notes 1, 3, and 4.)

swillenboard (see Noles I, 3, and 4.)

(c) Short-circuit protection need not be provided where overload protection is provided at the main switchboard and the consumer mains are constructed and installed

1.5.5.5 Protection by electrical separation

Separation is intended, in an individual circuit, to prevent shock current through contact with exposed conductive parts that might be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of that circuit.

Live parts of a separated circuit shall not be connected at any point to earth or to another circuit.

Any protective bonding conductor associated with a separated circuit shall not be connected at any point to earth.

NOTE: Clause 7.4 contains requirements for protection by electrical separation 7.4.1 General

The particular requirements of this Clause (Clause 7.4) provide methods of protection against electric shock arising from indirect contact that are deemed to comply with Clause 1.5.5.5. These methods include that of protection by electrical separation of the supply. Protection by electrical separation is an alternative to other recognized methods and is intended, in an individual circuit, to prevent shock current through contact with exposed conductive parts that might be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of that circuit. Protection by electrical separation shall be afforded by compliance with Clauses 7.4.2 to 7.4.4, and with-(a) Clause 7.4.5 for a supply to one item of equipment; or (b) Clause 7.4.6 for a supply to more than one item of equipment. 7.4.5 Supply to single item of electrical equipment Where a separated circuit supplies a single item of electrical equipment. any exposed conductive parts of the electrical equipment shall not be connected to the exposed conductive parts of any other circuit, including other separated circuits or earth. 7.4.6 Supply to multiple items of electrical equipment Where a separated circuit supplies more than one item of electrical equipment, the following requirements apply: (a) Any exposed conductive parts of the separated circuit shall be connected together by an insulated equipotential bonding conductor that is not connected to-(i) earth; (ii) a protective earthing conductor or exposed conductive parts of another circuit, including another separated circuit; or (iii) any extraneous conductive parts. (b) The designated earthing contact of any socket-outlet installed on the separated circuit shall be connected to the equipotential bonding conductor. (c) The designated protective earthing conductor in any supply cable or flexible cord to electrical equipment [other than Class II (double or reinforced insulation) equipment] connected to the separated circuit shall be connected to the equipotential bonding conductor. (d) Exposed conductive parts of the source of supply that are earthed, shall not be simultaneously accessible with any exposed conductive part of the separated circuit. (e) A protective device shall operate to disconnect the separated circuit automatically in the event of two faults resulting in exposed conductive parts being connected to live parts of different polarity. If the protective device is a circuit-breaker, the protective device shall open in all (i) unearthed conductors substantially together. Refer to **clause 1.5.5.5** – Protection by electrical separation Protection by electrical separation is intended, in an individual circuit, to prevent shock current through contact with exposed conductive parts that might be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of that circuit.

Live parts of a separated circuit shall: 41.\_\_\_\_

Any protective bonding conductor associated with a separated circuit shall: 42.\_\_\_\_\_

**NOTE:** Clause 7.4 contains requirements for protection by electrical separation.

## 1.5.5.5 Protection by electrical separation

Separation is intended, in an individual circuit, to prevent shock current through contact with exposed conductive parts that might be energized by a fault in the basic insulation of that circuit.

Live parts of a separated circuit shall not be connected at any point to earth or to another circuit.

Any protective bonding conductor associated with a separated circuit shall not be connected at any point to earth.

NOTE: Clause 7.4 contains requirements for protection by electrical separation

## Refer to Clause 1.4.98 - Voltage

Extra Low Voltage is defined as voltage: 43.

Protection can be provided by the use of:

44.\_\_\_\_\_ or,

45.\_\_\_\_\_

1.4.128 Voltage

Differences of potential normally existing between conductors or between conductors and earth as follows:

(a) Extra-low voltage Not exceeding 50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c.

(b) Low voltage Exceeding extra-low voltage, but not exceeding 1000 V a.c. or 1500 V d.c.

(c) High voltage Exceeding low voltage.

7.5.9 Overcurrent protection

7.5.9.1 General

Every extra-low voltage circuit shall be individually protected at its origin against overload and short-circuit currents by a protective device that-(a) shall comply with the applicable requirements of Clauses 2.2 and 2.5;

and

(b) may be provided in one conductor less than the number of conductors in the circuit.

Where the extra-low voltage supply is earthed at the point of supply, the protective devices shall be installed in all the unearthed conductors. 2.5.2 Devices for protection against both overload and short-circuit currents

Protective devices providing protection against both overload and shortcircuit current shall be capable of breaking any overcurrent up to and

including the prospective short-circuit current at the point where the device is installed.

The device shall comply with the requirements of Clauses 2.5.3 and 2.5.4. Exception: A protective device having a breaking capacity below the value of the prospective short-circuit current may be used in conjunction with another device in accordance with Clause 2.5.7.2.

Protective devices may be one of the following:

(a) Circuit-breakers incorporating short-circuit and overload releases

- (b) Fuse-combination units (CFS units).
- (c) Fuses having enclosed fuse-links (HRC fuses).(a) (d) Circuit-breakers in conjunction with fuses

# Page 83

The use of fixed setting RCDs with a rated operating residual current not exceeding \_\_\_\_\_ mA, is recognized as providing additional protection in areas where excessive earth leakage current could present a significant risk of electric shock.

2.6.3.2.3.3 Requirements for additional protection

Additional protection by RCDs with a maximum rated residual current of 30 mA shall be provided for final subcircuits with a rating not exceeding 32 A supplying-

- (a) socket-outlets;
- (b) lighting;

RCD's provide protection against indirect contact by automatically disconnecting the supply from the affected circuit or circuits. As the current required to trip a RCD is very \_\_\_\_\_, it is not dependent on a very low 'fault loop impedance' value which is necessary to operate protective devices such as circuit breakers and fuses.

## Low

1.4.102 Residual current device (RCD)

A device intended to isolate supply to protected circuits, socketoutlets or electrical equipment in the event of a current flow to earth that exceeds a predetermined value.

Refer to **clause 1.5.6** – Additional protection by the use of RCDs Read clauses 1.5.6.1 to 1.5.6.3 and answer the following: 50. RCDs are \_\_\_\_\_\_ as a sole means of basic protection

1.5.6.1 Basic protection

RCDs are not recognized as a sole means of basic protection (in normal service) but may be used to augment one of the means set out in Clause 1.5.4.2.

51. RCDs are recognized as a means of providing \_\_\_\_\_\_ of supply (fault protection)

1.5.6.2 Fault protection

RCDs are recognized as a means of providing automatic disconnection of supply in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.3

52.RCDs shall be installed for additional protection of the following:

(a)\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_as specified in Clause 2.6

2.6.3.2.3.3 Requirements for additional protection Additional protection by RCDs with a maximum rated residual current of 30 mA shall be provided for final subcircuits with a rating not exceeding 32 A supplying-(a) socket-outlets; (b) lighting; (c) direct connected hand-held electrical equipment, e.g. directly connected tools; and (d) direct connected electrical equipment that represents an increased risk of electric shock. Factors that may represent an increased risk of electric shock include but are not limited to-(i) external influences (refer Clause 1.5.14); and (ii) type of electrical installation and processes being conducted (e.g. workshops and particular industrial activities). (b) Wiring systems as specified in Clause \_\_\_\_\_ 2.6.3.2.1 General RCD installation requirements, for Australia only, shall comply with Clauses 2, 6, 3, 2, 2 to 2, 6, 3, 2, 6, Exceptions: These requirements need not apply to the following: 1 Final subcircuits supplied at ELV in accordance with Clause 7.5. 2 Final subcircuits supplied from a separated supply in accordance with Clause 7.4. (c) Electric heating cables as specified in Clause 4.10.5. (d) Electrical equipment, including socket-outlets, installed in \_\_\_\_\_as specified in Section 6. 2.6.3.1 General The requirements of this Clause for the installation of RCDs are in addition to the RCD requirements for electrical installations as specified in-(a) other Australian and New Zealand Standards, e.g. AS/NZS 3001, AS/NZS 3002, AS/NZS 3003, AS/NZS 3004 series and AS/NZS 3012; (b) other Sections of this Standard, e.g.-(i) Section 3 for protection against mechanical damage; (ii) Section 6 for baths, showers and other water containers; and (iii) Section 7 for special electrical installations; and (c) the requirements and regulations of legislation, such as work health and safety legislation. (e) Specific electrical installations as specified in AS/NZS 3001, AS/NZS 3002, AS/NZS 3003, AS/NZS 3004, AS/NZS 3012 and AS/NZS 4249.

## Refer to clause 1.4.40 - Damp Situation

A damp situation is defined as a situation in which:

Refer to **Section 6 – Damp Situations** and **clause 6.1.2** – Selection and Installation In addition to the requirements of AS3000 sections 1 - 5, electrical equipment used in damp situations shall be selected and installed to perform the following functions associated with the proper design, correct construction and safe operation of the electrical installation:

(a) Provide \_\_\_\_\_\_ against **electric shock** in locations where the presence of \_\_\_\_\_\_ or high \_\_\_\_\_\_ present an increased risk.

- (b) Provide \_\_\_\_\_\_ protection against **damage** that might reasonably be expected from the presence of water or high humidity.
- 6.1.2 Selection and installation

In addition to the requirements of Sections 2 to 5 of this Standard, electrical equipment used in damp situations shall be selected and installed to perform the following functions:

(a) Provide enhanced protection against electric shock in locations where the presence of water or high humidity present an increased risk.

NOTE: This increased risk of electric shock is generated by a reduction in body resistance and the likelihood of contact of the body with earth potential.

(b) Provide adequate protection against damage that might reasonably be expected from the presence of water or high humidity.

NOTE: Appendix G describes the IP system of classification of degrees of (c) protection for electrical equipment.

AS3000 defines specific additional requirements for equipment installed in the following damp situations:

Π\_\_\_\_\_

- □\_\_\_\_\_
- This Section applies to the following damp situations:
- (i) Baths, showers and other fixed water containers.
- (ii) Swimming pools, paddling pools and spa pools or tubs.
- (iii) Fountains and water features.
- (iv) Saunas.
- (v) Refrigeration rooms.
- (vi) Sanitization and general hosing-down operations.
- Page 86

# **17.INTERNATIONAL PROTECTION RATINGS**

Refer to AS/NZS 3000 **Appendix G** – G1 Introduction. The 'IP' rating is usually written as 'IP' followed by two numbers and, sometimes, anadditional letter. The first number, from1 to 6 designates a degree of protection against

□ The second number, from 1 to 8, designates a degree of protection against\_\_\_\_\_

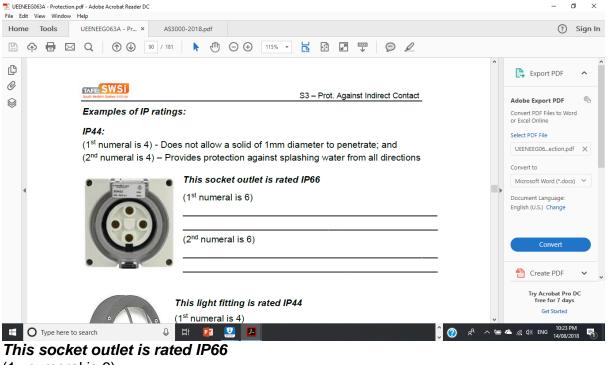
If a specific degree of protection is not designated, an 'X' is used instead of either one or both numbers. See AS/NZS 3000 figures G1a to G1d below.

The first number, from 1 to 6, designates a degree of 'protection against solid objects', and 'protection of persons against access to hazardous parts'.

The second number, from 1 to 8, designates a degree of 'protection against entry of water with harmful effects'.

If a specific degree of protection is not designated, an 'X' is used instead of

either one or both numbers.

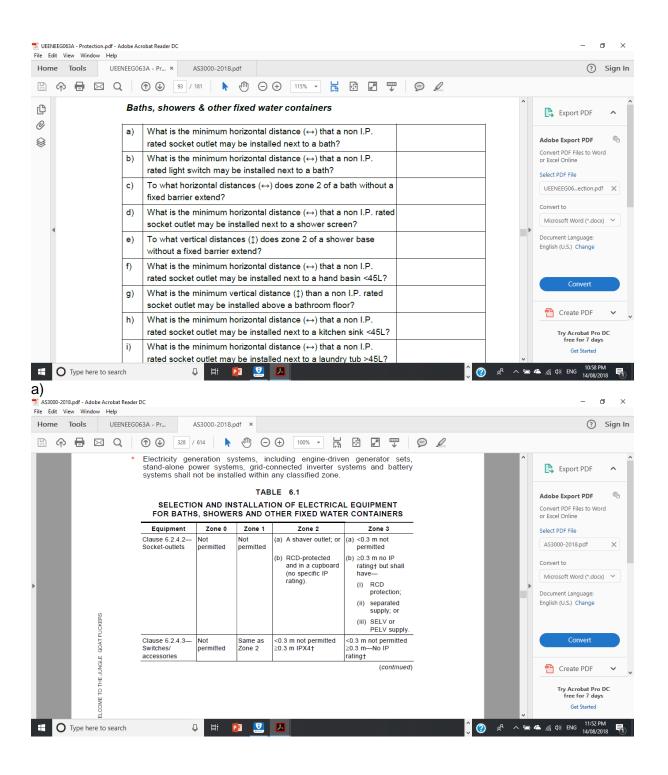


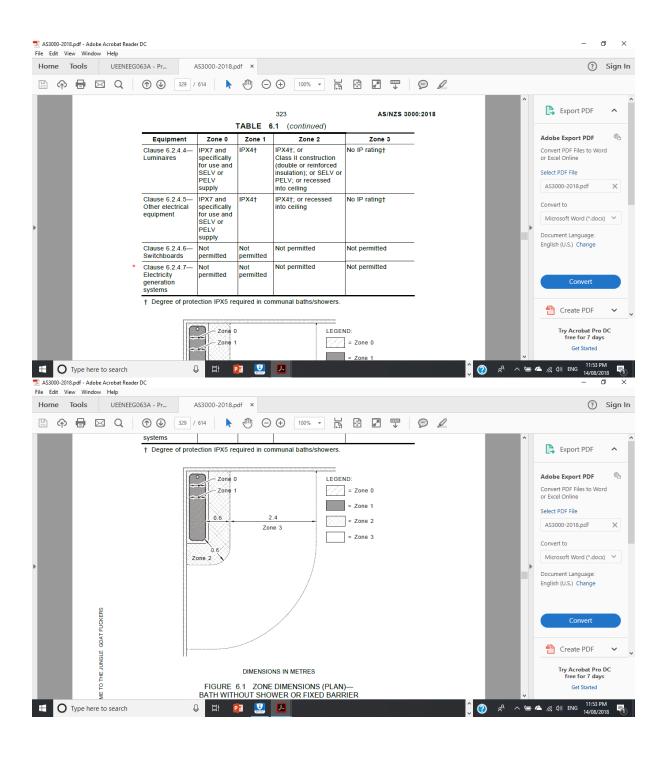
(1st numeral is 6) Totally protected against ingress of dust

(2nd numeral is 6) Protected against strong jets of water. Limited ingress permitted

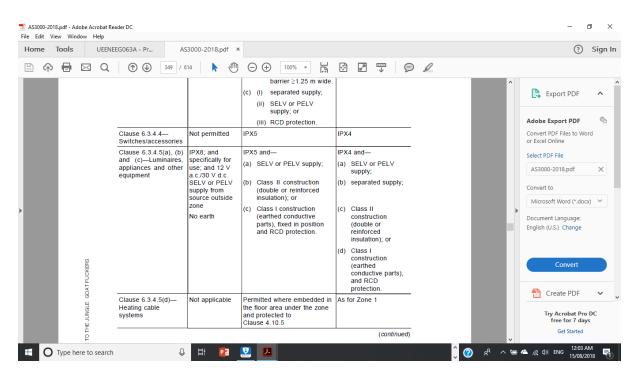
📜 UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC File Edit View Window Help			– 0 ×
	\\$3000-2018.pdf		? Sign In
🖺 🏟 🖶 🖂 Q 🕜 🕑 90 / 1	181 🖡 🖑 🕞 🕂 115% 🕶 📙 🐼 🗗 🐺 🦻 🖉		
	This light fitting is rated IP44	- ^	Export PDF
₽	(1 <sup>st</sup> numeral is 4)	-	Adobe Export PDF Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
	(2 <sup>nd</sup> numeral is 4)	_	Select PDF File UEENEEG06ection.pdf X Convert to
4		-	Microsoft Word (".docx) V Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
Q	This IP switch has rubber boots & gaskets & is rated IP56 (1 <sup>st</sup> numeral is 5)	_	Convert
	(2 <sup>nd</sup> numeral is 6)	-	🕈 Create PDF 🗸 🗸
_			Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Get Started
Type here to search	〕 詳 😰 🛄 🔼	🗘 🕜 🤘 🗘	へ ( d)》 ENG 10-25 PM 14/08/2018 - 14/08/2018
(1st numeral is 4)			
The access probe of 1.0 mm			
diameter is not to penetra	te		
Protected against water			
Second number is 4			
splashed from all directio	115.		
Limited ingress permitted			
🟃 UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC			– 0 ×
File Edit View Window Help			
	\s3000-2018.pdf		(?) Sign In
中 日 Q ① ④ 11	181 ▶ ⊕ ⊖ ⊕ 115% - K 🔂 🖉 🐺 👂 🖉 (2 <sup>nd</sup> numeral is 6)	^	^
C		_	Export PDF
()		_	
\$			Adobe Export PDF
AT IN	This socket outlet has the following specifications:		or Excel Online
	- It permits a limited ingress of dust with no harmful deposits;		Select PDF File
1	- It permits a limited ingress of water when sprayed from above		UEENEEG06ection.pdf X
	at an angle of not more than 60º from the vertical.		Convert to
	Rating is: IP	•	Microsoft Word (*.docx) V
	Nating 13. II		Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
Page 24 of 181 Last Updated 02/02/2016	Version 1 UEENEEG063A Section 3 – Prot. Indirect Contact		Convert
			Treate PDF V
			Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days
S3 - Prot Against Ir	adiract Contact	~	Get Started
E O Type here to search		🗘 🕜 🦗 ^ 📼	へんです。 ENG 10:52 PM 14/08/2018 号

Limited ingress of dust permitted (no harmful deposit)--- First Number 5 Protected against sprays to 60° from the vertical. Limited ingress permitted-Second number 3 IP 53





ome Tools	UEENEEG063A - Pr ×	AS3000-2018.pdf				? 5	Sig
ዮ 🖶 🖂	Q ⑦ ⊕ 93 /	181 🕨 🖑	⊖ ⊕ 115% ▼ 🙀	0 2 - 0 2			
	Refer to AS/NZS	53000 <b>Table 6</b>	5.2 and figures 6.12 to	6.16 and answer the followir	ng:	Export PDF	^
	Pools, paddling	y pools & spa	pools or tubs			Adobe Export PDF	0
	a) What area is pool?	s described as z	zone 0 of an in-ground sw	imming		Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online	
	~/		es (↔) does zone 1 of an i i the water's edge?	n-ground		Select PDF File UEENEEG06ection.pdf	×
			I.P. 53 rated 10A socket	outlet at a		Convert to	
4	horizontal d		.5m from the internal rim without further enclosure)	of the pool	•	Microsoft Word (*.docx)	~
	· · · ·		230∨ light fitting at a horiz he internal rim of the pool			Document Language: English (U.S.) Change	
			capacity of 4000L classed			Convert	
	· · · · ·		for pool lights installed in	zone 0 of a	=	Create PDF	
dit View Window	: Acrobat Reader DC // Help UEENEEG063A - Pr			Bann 27 of 194	پ ۲۵۰۹ کې کې کې	Get Started (6) ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018 – 01 (?) S	
00-2018.pdf - Adobe dit View Window ne Tools	to search Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ⑦ ④ 349 SELECTI	AS3000-2018.pdf > / 614 \ M	× →  →  →  →  →  →  →  →  →  →  →  →  →	EQUIPMENT		▲ 虎 句》 ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018 一 ①	
00-2018.pdf - Adobe lit View Window ne Tools	to search Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ⑦ ④ 349 SELECTI	AS3000-2018.pdf > / 614 \ M	× ) ⊖ ⊕ 100% ▼ ⊨ TABLE 6.2	EQUIPMENT		<ul> <li>(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/02/2018</li> <li>(7) S</li> </ul>	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe lit View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC / Help UEENEEG063A - Pr 3 Q ⑦ ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment		× → TABLE 6.2 LLATION OF ELECTRICAL 5, PADDLING POOLS AND OR TUBS Zone 1	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS Zone 2		<ul> <li>(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/02/2018</li> <li>(7) 2</li>     &lt;</ul>	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe lit View Window e Tools	to search s Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q		TABLE 6.2 LLATION OF ELECTRICAL A, PADDLING POOLS AND OR TUBS	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS		<ul> <li>(A) ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018</li> <li>(P) (P) (P) (P)</li> <li>(P) (P) (P)</li> </ul>	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe it View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ① ① ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3—		× TABLE 6.2 LLATION OF ELECTRICAL S, PADDLING POOLS AND OR TUBS Zone 1 Not permitted for general use	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV		(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018     (7) S (7) S	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe it View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ① ① ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3—		×	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply;		(i) ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018     (i) ENG 15/08/2018     (i) Converted to the second seco	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe it View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ① ① ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3—		X     X     Constant of the second sec	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV supply; or		(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/02/2018 (c) S (c) S	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe it View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ① ① ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3—		x TABLE 6.2 LLATION OF ELECTRICAL 5, PADDLING POOLS AND OR TUBS	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV supply; or		(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/02/2018 (c) CONVERTING (c) C	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe lit View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ① ① ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3—		x TABLE 6.2 LLATION OF ELECTRICAL 3, PADDLING POOLS AND OR TUBS 20ne 1 Not permitted for general use For pool equipment only: (a) IPX5. (b) (i) ≥0.45 m high; and ≥1.25 m from internal rim; or (ii) under and ≥0.5 m from edge of fixed continuous horizontal	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV supply; or		(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/02/2018 (c) S (c) S	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe lit View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEGO63A - Pr 3 Q ① ① ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3— Socket-outlets	Et P	<ul> <li>×</li> <li>ABLE 6.2</li> <li>CABLE 6.2</li> <li>CABLE 6.2</li> <li>CABLING POOLS AND OR TUBS</li> <li>Zone 1</li> <li>Not permitted for general use For pool equipment only:         <ul> <li>(a) IPX5.</li> <li>(b) (i) ≥0.45 m high; and ≥1.25 m from internal rim; or</li> <li>(ii) under and ≥0.5 m from edge of fixed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide.</li> <li>(c) (i) separated supply;</li> <li>(ii) SELV or PELV supply; or</li> <li>(iii) RCD protection.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV supply; or (c) RCD protection.		(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018     (b) ENG 15/08/2018     (c) Convert PDF     (c) Convert PDF     (c) Convert PDF     (c) Convert PDF File     (c) AS3000-2018.pdf     (c) Convert to     (c) Microsoft Word (*.docx)     Document Language:     English (U.S.) Change	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe lit View Window e Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC r Help UEENEEG063A - Pr Q ① ① ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3—	Contraction of the second sec	<ul> <li>★</li> <li>★</li> <li>TABLE 6.2</li> <li>LLATION OF ELECTRICAL S, PADDLING POOLS AND OR TUBS</li> <li>Zone 1</li> <li>Not permitted for general use For pool equipment only:         <ul> <li>(a) IPX5.</li> <li>(b) (i) 20.45 m high; and 21.25 m from internal rim; or</li> <li>(ii) under and ≥0.5 m from edge of fixed continuous horizontal barier 21.25 m wide.</li> <li>(c) (c) separated supply;</li> <li>(ii) SELV or PELV supply; or</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV supply; or		(a) ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018     (b) ENG 15/08/2018     (c) Convert PDF     (c) Convert PDF     (c) Convert PDF     (c) Convert PDF File     (c) AS3000-2018.pdf     (c) Convert to     (c) Microsoft Word (*.docx)     Document Language:     English (U.S.) Change	Sig
00-2018.pdf - Adobe dit View Window ne Tools	to search # Acrobat Reader DC / Help UEENEEG063A - Pr 3 Q ⑦ ⑦ ④ 349 SELECTI FOR SW Equipment Clause 6.3.4.3- Socket-outlets		<ul> <li>×</li> <li>ABLE 6.2</li> <li>CABLE 6.2</li> <li>CABLE 6.2</li> <li>CABLING POOLS AND OR TUBS</li> <li>Zone 1</li> <li>Not permitted for general use For pool equipment only:         <ul> <li>(a) IPX5.</li> <li>(b) (i) ≥0.45 m high; and ≥1.25 m from internal rim; or</li> <li>(ii) under and ≥0.5 m from edge of fixed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide.</li> <li>(c) (i) separated supply;</li> <li>(ii) SELV or PELV supply; or</li> <li>(iii) RCD protection.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	EQUIPMENT SPA POOLS IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV supply; or (c) RCD protection.		(i) ENG 12:01 AM 15/08/2018     (i) ENG 15/08/2018     (i) ENG	sig ~ «



# **19. EQUIPOTENTIAL BONDING IN DAMP SITUATIONS**

Refer to clause 5.6.2.5 – Showers and bathrooms

Any conductive reinforcing within a concrete floor or wall of a room containing a shower or bath shall be bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation. An equipotential bonding conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.6.3, shall be connected between the reinforcing material and any part of the earthing system. The minimum CSA of the equipotential bonding conductor shall be \_\_\_\_\_mm<sub>2</sub>

5.6.3.2 Size

The size of equipotential bonding conductors shall be determined from the requirements of this Clause 5.6.3, as appropriate to the particular bonding conductor application.

The size of equipotential bonding conductors shall be in accordance with the following:

(a) Conductive piping, cable sheaths and wiring enclosures The equipotential bonding conductor required in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.2 to 5.6.2.4 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4 mm<sub>2</sub>.

(b) Showers, bathrooms, swimming and spa pools The equipotential bonding conductors required to connect conductive parts of a shower, bathroom, swimming or spa pool in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.5 and 5.6.2.6 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4 mm<sub>2</sub>. Exception: The cross-sectional area of the equipotential bonding conductor for a swimming or spa pool may be determined as for an earthing conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.3.3.4(c), where the equipotential bonding conductor is incorporated in a multi-core flexible cord supplying electrical equipment that is required to be removed for maintenance.

(c) Telephone and telecommunication earthing systems The

equipotential bonding conductors required to connect a telephone and telecommunication earthing system in accordance with Clause 5.6.2.7 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>. NOTE: Refer to the AS/NZS 60079 series for minimum sizes of equipotential bonding conductors in explosive atmospheres.

#### Refer to **clause 5.6.2.6** – Swimming and spa pools

The following items shall be equipotentially bonded:

(a) The exposed conductive part of any electrical equipment in the classified pool zones.
(b) Any \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of electrical equipment that are not

separated from live parts by double insulation and that are in contact with the pool water, including water in the circulation or filtering system.

5.6.2.6.4 Electrical equipment

The following items associated with electrical equipment shall be equipotentially bonded:

(a) The exposed conductive parts of any electrical equipment in the classified pool zones.

(b) Any exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment in contact with the pool water, including water in the circulation or filtration system, e.g. filtration pumps and heating systems

Where any of the items described in Item (a) or Item (b) exist, the bonding shall be extended to the following additional items:

(i) Any fixed \_\_\_\_\_\_ conductive parts of the pool structure, including the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the pool shell and deck.

(ii) Any conductive fittings within or attached to the pool structure, such as pool ladders and diving boards.

(iii) Any fixed conductive material within arm's reach of the pool edge, such as conductive fences, lamp standards and pipe work.

An equipotential bonding conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.6.3, shall be connected between the bonded parts and the earthing conductor associated with each circuit supplying the pool or spa, or the earthing bar at the switchboard at which the circuit originates.

The minimum CSA of the equipotential bonding conductor shall be \_\_\_\_\_mm2 5Where any items specified in Clauses 5.6.2.6.2 or 5.6.2.6.4 are required to be equipotentially bonded, the bonding shall be extended to any fixed conductive material (such as pool ladders, diving boards, conductive fences, pipework and reinforcing metal in a concrete slab) that is installed within arm's reach of the pool edge, and that is in contact with the general mass of earth either directly or indirectly.

The size of equipotential bonding conductors shall be in accordance with the following:

5.6.3 Bonding conductors

(a) Conductive piping, cable sheaths and wiring enclosures The equipotential bonding conductor required in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.2 to 5.6.2.4 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4 mm<sub>2</sub>.

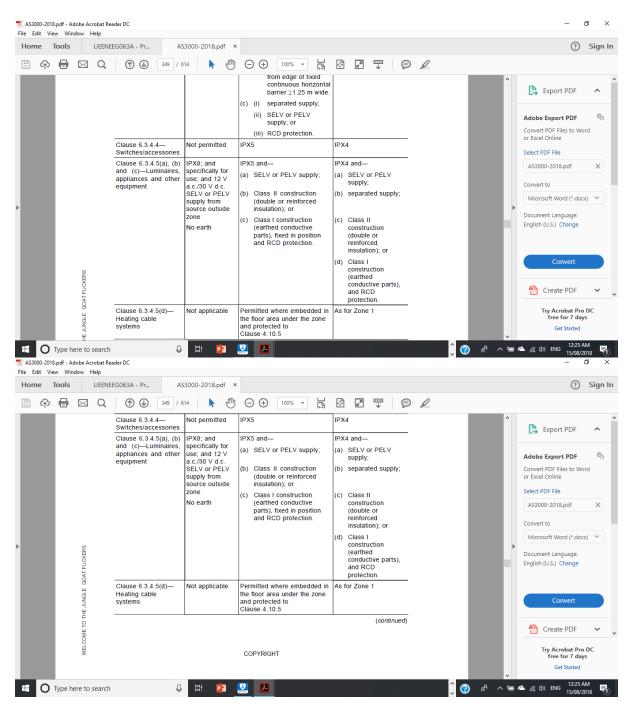
(b) Showers, bathrooms, swimming and spa pools The equipotential bonding conductors required to connect conductive parts of a shower,

bathroom, swimming or spa pool in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.5 and 5.6.2.6 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4 mm<sub>2</sub>. Exception: The cross-sectional area of the equipotential bonding conductor for a swimming or spa pool may be determined as for an earthing conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.3.3.4(c), where the equipotential bonding conductor is incorporated in a multi-core flexible cord supplying electrical equipment that is required to be removed for maintenance.

(c) Telephone and telecommunication earthing systems The equipotential bonding conductors required to connect a telephone and telecommunication earthing system in accordance with Clause 5.6.2.7 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>.

	NEEG063A - Protection.pdf - J dit View Window Help	Adobe Acrobat Reader DC			– 0 ×
Hom	ne Tools UE	ENEEG063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf			? Sign In
Ð	ቀ 🖶 🖂 ር	<b>(</b> ) ( <b>)</b> ( <b>)</b> 95 / 181 <b>)</b> ( <b>)</b>	115% 🔹 📴 🐨 🐺 🦻 🖉		
þ		to be used for designated damp areas a	nd zones can be determined.	^	Export PDF
0		Refer to <u>section 6</u> and complete the foll	owing table.		Adobe Export PDF
		Designated Damp Situation as per AS/NZS3000	Additional Protection method(s) required for the area (method will be dependent on zone)		Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
					Select PDF File
		Baths, showers and other fixed water			UEENEEG06ection.pdf 🗙
		containers			Convert to
					Microsoft Word (*.docx)
	•	Swimming pools, paddling pools and spa pools or tubs.		•	Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
					Convert
					🚹 Create PDF 🛛 🗸 🗸
		Fountains and water features.			Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days
				J	Get Started
	O Type here to sear	rch 🔱 🛱 😰 💆	Ĵ 🕐	x <sup>e</sup> ~ 📾	🕿 🧖 ሲ») ENG 12:23 AM 15/08/2018 😽

Nome: Tools       UtstaccodA · Pr. *       Alson 2018pdf       ③ Sign In         Image: Tools       UtstaccodA · Pr. *       Alson 2018pdf       ③ Sign In         Image: Tools       Image: Too	UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Ac File Edit View Window Help	dobe Acrobat Reader DC					– o ×
Fountains and water features.       Asset Spert PDF *         Saunas       Ferrigeration rooms.         Saunas       Refrigeration rooms.         Saunas       Saunas         ************************************		VEEG063A - Pr × AS	3000-2018.pdf				? Sign In
Image: Source	B 🕈 🖶 🖂 Q	(†) (18)	n 🕨 🕅	⊖ ⊕ 115% ▼ 📙	0 2 7 9 2		
Saunas       Covert is         Refrigeration rooms.       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         The fire works with the operation is in the operation of the operation is in the operation operation is in the operation operation is in the operation operation operation is in the operation opera		Fountains and wa	ter features.			^	Export PDF
Saunas Saunas Saunas Saunas Saunas Saunas Refrigeration rooms. Sanitization and general hosing-down operations Sanitization and general hosing-down operations Convert							Adobe Export PDF
Refrigeration rooms.       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Operations       Convert is information in the second operation	~						Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
Refrigeration rooms.       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing-down operations       Sanitization and general hosing-down operations         Image: Sanitization and general hosing hosing hosing hosing hosing hosing hosing		Saunas					Select PDF File
Refrigeration rooms.       Sinitization and general hosing-down         operations       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down       Image: Sinitization and general hosing-down         Image: Sinitizatio							
Refrigeration rooms.       Downert Language         Sanitization and general hosing-down       Convert         operations       Convert         The free free of sector       Convert         Convert       Convert							
Sanitization and general hosing-down operations	4	Refrigeration roon	ns.			•	Document Language:
Image: Control Display: Co		Sanitization and g	jeneral hosing	g-down			Convert
		operations					🚹 Create PDF 🗸 🗸
Image: Second			**	· ****	****		free for 7 days
OR TUBS         Equipment       Zone 0       Zone 1       Zone 2         Clause 6.3.4.3       Not permitted for general use for pool equipment only:       (a) separated supply;         (a)       separated supply;       (b)       SELV or PELV supply, or       (c)       RCD protection.         (ii)       under and 20.5 m from edge of flace continuous horizontal barrier 21.25 m Wide.       (c)       Separated supply;       (c)       RCD protection.         (iii)       under and 20.5 m from edge of flace continuous horizontal barrier 21.25 m Wide.       (c)       Separated supply;       (c)       Separated supply;         (iii)       SELV or PELV supply; or       (iii)       RCD protection.       (c)       Separated supply;         (iii)       SELV or PELV supply; or       (iii)       RCD protection.       (iii)       Microsoft Word (".docs")         Clause 6.3.4.4       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4       IPX4       (iii)         Clause 6.3.4.5(a)       (b)       IPX8; and specifically for ac/30 V dc, equipment       IPX6 and       (a)       SELV or PELV supply;       (b) separated supply;       (c)       (c)       (c) Clause (f)       (c)       Try crount Pro DC       Try crout Pro U       Try crout Pro DC       T	File         Edit         View         Window         Help           Home         Tools         UEEN	AS () () () () () () () () () () () () () (		LATION OF ELECTRICAL	EQUIPMENT	1	③ Sign In
Clause 6.3.4.3							
(a) IPX5.       (b) (i) 20.45 m high; and 21.25 m trom internal ring; or       (c) RCD protection.         (b) (i) 20.45 m high; and 21.25 m vide.       (c) RCD protection.         (ii) under and 20.5 m from edge of fixed continuous horizontal barrier 21.25 m vide.       (c) Rectarge of fixed continuous horizontal barrier 21.25 m vide.         (c) (ii) SELV or PELV supply; or       (iii) RCD protection.       Document Language: English (U.S.) Change         Clause 6.3.4.4       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.6(a), (b) and (c)-Luminaries, specifically for use; and 12 V c, SELV or PELV supply; (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) class II construction (double or reinforced in source outside construction, (double or reinforced in source outside construction, (double or reinforced in source outside construction (construction (construction), or       IPX4 and         (b) Class II construction (construction (construction)       (b) Class II construction (construction (construction)       (b) separated supply;         (c) Class II construction (construction (construction)       (c) Class II construction (c) Class II construction       (c) Class II construction		Clause 6.3.4.3-		Not permitted for general use	IPX4 and—		Convert PDF Files to Word
Clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.6- Switches/accessories       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.7- Switches/accessories       IPX6 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced issultation;) or       IPX4 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) class II construction (double or reinforced issultation;) or       IPX4 and- (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced issultation;) or       IPX4 and- (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced issultation;) or       IPX4 and- (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced issultation;) or       IPX4 and- (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced issultation;) or       IPX6 and- (c) Class II construction (c) Class				(a) IPX5.			
Clause 6.3.4.4       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.4       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.6       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.7-       IPX6 and       (a) SELV or PELV supply;       (b) Separated supply;         ac/30 V dz       Construction       (b) Class II construction       (b) separated supply;       (c) Class II construction         (b) class II construction       (c) Class II construction       (c) Class II construction       (c) Class II construction       (c) Class II construction         conce				≥1.25 m from internal			
Clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.6- Switches/accessories       IPX5 and- and (c)-Luminaries, specifically for appliances and other equipment       IPX5 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced issulation); or       IPX4 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; for supply from source outside       IPX5 and- (b) Separated supply; (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced issulation); or       IPX4 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) separated supply; (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced issulation); or       IPX4 and- (c) SELV or PELV supply from source outside				(ii) under and ≥0.5 m			
Clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.5(a) (b) and (c)-Luminates, equipment       IPX5 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or       IPX4 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) separated supply; (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or       IPX4 and- (a) SELV or PELV supply; (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or       IPX4 and- (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or	•			continuous horizontal		•	
Clause 6.3.4.4       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.6(a), (b)       IPX8; and       IPX5 and-       IPX4 and-         and (c)-Luminaires, specifically for appliances and other equipment       IPX5 and-       IPX4 and-         (d)       SELV or PELV supply;       (a)       SELV or PELV supply;       Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days         Guarden and (c)-Luminaires, and 12 V acrobat Pro LV supply from source outside or reinforced insulation; or       (b)       Searated supply;       (b)         (c)       Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or       (c)       Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or       (c)       Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or         (d)       Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or       (c)       Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or							
Clause 6.3.4.4 Switches/accessories       Not permitted       IPX5       IPX4         Clause 6.3.4.5(a), (b) and (c)uninaires, equipment       IPX5 and - (a) SELV or PELV supply; equipment       IPX4 and - (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) class II construction (b) class II construction (c) class II constr				supply; or			
Clause 6.3.4.5(a), (b) IPX8; and and (c)—Luminaires, appliances and other equipment equipment eq			Not permitted		IPX4		Convert
appliances and other equipment a c/30 V d, (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or Zone (c) Class Leonstruction (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced) zone (c) Class Leonstruction (c) Class II construction (c) Class Leonstruction (c) Class II construction (c) Class Leonstruction (c) Class II construction (c) Class II construction (c) Class II construction (c) Class II construction (c) Class II construction (c) Class II cons		Clause 6.3.4.5(a), (b)		IPX5 and—	IPX4 and—		<b>A</b>
SULV OF FLV (0) Class I construction (0) Separated supply, free for 7 days supply from source outside or reinforced insulation); or (c) Class III (c) Cl		appliances and other	use; and 12 V a.c./30 V d.c.		supply;		v
			supply from source outside	(double or reinforced	(b) separated supply;		free for 7 days
	Type here to searc	h 🕛		Case Construction	(c) Class II	) R ~ %	▲ <i>信</i> 句》 ENG 12:25 AM 長



When protection against indirect contact is provided by automatic disconnection of the supply, what is the maximum disconnection time for –

e)a power circuit with a rating of less than 63A

f)equipment that has only single insulation

g)an electric range

h)a submain.

(a)	(b)	(c)	
(d)	AS,	/NZS 3000 reference	

1.5.5.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply

(d) Disconnection times The maximum disconnection time for 230/400 V supply voltage shall not exceed the following:

(i) 0.4 s for final subcircuits that supply-

(A) socket-outlets having rated currents not exceeding 63 A;

(B) hand-held Class I equipment; or

(C) portable equipment intended for manual movement during use.

(ii) 5 s for other circuits including submains and final subcircuits supplying fixed or stationary equipment.

If a "touch voltage" exceeds certain values a protective device must disconnect thesupply. What are the limits of "touch voltage"?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

1.5.5.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply

(b) Touch-voltage limits In the event of a fault between a live part and an exposed conductive part that could give rise to a prospective touch voltage exceeding 50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c., a protective device shall automatically disconnect the supply to the circuit or electrical equipment concerned.

NOTE: Lower touch-voltage limits are required for special electrical installations or locations by the relevant clauses of Sections 6 and 7.

What are the four acceptable methods for protection against indirect contact specified in AS/NZS 3000:2007?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference

1.5.5.2 Methods of protection
Fault protection shall be provided by one or any combination of the following methods:
(a) Automatically disconnect the supply on the occurrence of a fault likely to cause a current flow through a body in contact with exposed conductive parts, where the value of that current is equal to or greater than the shock current, in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.3.
(b) Prevent a fault current from passing through a body by the use of Class II equipment or equivalent insulation, in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.4.
(c) Prevent a fault current from passing through a body by electrical separation of the system, in accordance with Clause 1.5.5.5.
NOTE: Clause 7.4 provides further guidance on electrical separation.
(d) Limit the fault current that can pass through a body to a value lower than the shock current.

7.Protection against indirect contact by automatic disconnection of the supply is achieved by two factors. What are the two factors?

\_\_\_AS/NZS 3000 reference\_\_\_

1.5.5.3 Protection by automatic disconnection of supply
The following applies:

(a) Automatic disconnection of supply is intended to limit the prospective touch voltage arising between simultaneously accessible conductive parts in the event of a fault between a live part and exposed conductive parts or a protective earthing conductor.
This method of protection shall be achieved by(i) provision of a system of equipotential bonding in which exposed conductive parts are connected to a protective earthing

8.Where may socket outlets be installed in a pool zone for the connection of pool equipment?

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

6.2.4.2 Socket-outlets

Socket-outlets shall not be installed within 0.3 m of the floor of a bathroom, laundry or other similar location where the floor is likely to become wet.
Regardless of the degree of protection provided by the equipment, the following requirements apply to the installation of socket-outlets in classified zones:

(a) Zone 0 and Zone 1 Socket-outlets shall not be installed in Zone 0
or 1.
(b) Zone 2 Socket-outlets installed in Zone 2 shall be(i) of the automatic switching type incorporated in a shaver supply unit complying with AS/NZS 3194; or
(ii) protected by an RCD with a fixed rated residual current not exceeding 30 mA and enclosed in a cupboard that maintains the enclosure of the socket-outlet during normal operation of the connected equipment.
(c) Zone 3 Socket-outlets installed in Zone 3 shall be-

(i) protected by an RCD with a fixed rated residual current not exceeding 30 mA;

(ii) supplied individually as a separated circuit, in accordance with Clause 7.4; or

(iii) supplied as an SELV or a PELV system, in accordance with Clause 7.5.

Describe one method of supply for luminaires immersed in pool water.

6.2.4.4 Luminaires The following requirements apply to the installation of luminaires in classified zones: (a) Zone O Luminaires installed in Zone O shall be-(i) provided with the required degree of protection; (ii) designed and constructed specifically for use in a bath, shower or water container; (iii) supplied at a nominal voltage not exceeding 12 V a.c. or 30 V ripple-free d.c.; and (iv) supplied from a source located outside Zone O as an SELV or a PELV system, in accordance with Clause 7.5. (b) Zones 1, 2 and 3 Luminaires installed in Zones 1, 2 and 3 shall be provided with at least the required degree of protection. Exceptions: Regardless of the degree of protection provided by the equipment, the following luminaires may be installed in Zone 2: 1 Luminaires of Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation) that require the removal of a cover to access lamps. NOTE: A batten holder is not a Class II luminaire. 2 Luminaires supplied from a source located outside Zone 2 as an SELV or a PELV system, in accordance with Clause 7.5.

State two alternative supply requirements for a circuit that supplies a pool filter pump.

AS/NZS 3000 reference 6.4.4.2 Wiring systems Wiring systems for a fountain or water feature shall be-(a) elastomer or thermoplastic insulated and sheathed copper cables or flexible cords suitable for immersion in the type of water being used; (b) where subject to mechanical damage, installed in a wiring enclosure; and (c) installed so as to prevent-(i) entry of moisture to any connection; and (ii) water siphoning through any wiring enclosure or cable. 6.3.4.5 Luminaires, appliances and other electrical equipment \* The following requirements apply to the installation of luminaires, appliances and other items of electrical equipment, excluding those specified in Clauses 6.3.4.3 (Socket-outlets) and 6.3.4.4 (Switches and other accessories), in classified zones: (a) Zone O Luminaires, appliances and other electrical equipment installed in Zone O shall be-(i) designed and constructed specifically for use in a swimming or spa pool; and

(ii) provided with the required degree of protection. Each luminaire, appliance or other item of electrical equipment shall be supplied-

(A) from an individual source installed outside Zone O NOTE: An individual source may be an individual isolation transformer or an individual winding on an isolation transformer having a number of secondary windings, provided that the output complies with Clause 7.5.3.

(B) at a nominal voltage not exceeding 12 V a.c. or 30 V ripple-free d.c.; and

(A) (C) as an SELV or a PELV system, in accordance with Clause 7.5. Is it permissible to install unenclosed socket outlets within zones 1 or 2 of a bathroom?

\_AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

#### No

# 6.2.4.2 Socket-outlets

Socket-outlets shall not be installed within 0.3 m of the floor of a bathroom, laundry or other similar location where the floor is likely to become wet. Regardless of the degree of protection provided by the equipment, the following requirements apply to the installation of socket-outlets in classified zones:

(a) Zone 0 and Zone 1 Socket-outlets shall not be installed in Zone 0 or 1.

(b) Zone 2 Socket-outlets installed in Zone 2 shall be-

(i) of the automatic switching type incorporated in a shaver supply unit complying with AS/NZS 3194; or

(ii) protected by an RCD with a fixed rated residual current not exceeding 30 mA and enclosed in a cupboard that maintains the enclosure of the socket-outlet during normal operation of the connected equipment.

(c) Zone 3 Socket-outlets installed in Zone 3 shall be-

(i) protected by an RCD with a fixed rated residual current not exceeding 30 mA;

(ii) supplied individually as a separated circuit, in accordance with Clause 7.4; or

(iii) supplied as an SELV or a PELV system, in accordance with Clause 7.5.

Tools Document			
-	AS/NZS 30	000 reference	Comment
12	Complete the following table. Indicate the minimum IP r	ating of accessories	🔔 Fill & Sign
	permitted in the following locations.		
	Location	IP rating	
	Within 2 metres of the water of a pool (Zone 1).		
	External to any building and exposed to the weather.		
	Appliances in the pool zone but not in contact with the circulating water.		•
	Appliances immersed in the pool water.		
	A switch installed within 500 mm of a 500 litre spa installed in a bathroom.		
	L		
	Complete the following table by determining the minimu between a normal socket outlet and the following water		Convert and edit PDF with Acrobat Pro DC

6.3.4 Selection and installation of electrical equipment

6.3.4.1 Degree of protection required

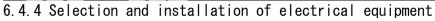
Electrical equipment permitted to be installed in a classified zone shall have at least the following degree of protection:

- (a) In Zone O-IPX8.
- (b) In Zone 1-IPX5.
- (c) In Zone 2-IPX4.

The requirements for selection and installation of electrical equipment are provided in Table 6.2.

	nent 🖹 🖶 🖂 Q	349	/ 614 🕞 🕂 100%		
			TABLE 6.2 LATION OF ELECTRICAL PADDLING POOLS AND OR TUBS		Comment
	Equipment	Zone 0	Zone 1	Zone 2	
	Clause 6.3.4.3— Socket-outlets	Not permitted	Not permitted for general use For pool equipment only: (a) IPX5.	IPX4 and— (a) separated supply; (b) SELV or PELV supply; or	
٩			<ul> <li>(b) (b) ≥0.45 m high; and ≥1.25 m from internal rim; or</li> <li>(ii) under and ≥0.5 m from edge of fixed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide.</li> <li>(c) (i) separated supply;</li> <li>(ii) SELV or PELV supply; or</li> </ul>	(c) RCD protection.	•
			(iii) RCD protection.		_
	Clause 6.3.4.4— Switches/accessories	Not permitted	IPX5	IPX4	
	Clause 6.3.4.5(a), (b) and (c)—Luminaires, appliances and other equipment	IPX8; and specifically for use; and 12 V a.c./30 V d.c. SELV or PELV	IPX5 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction	IPX4 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) separated supply;	
		supply from source outside zone No earth	<ul> <li>(double or reinforced insulation); or</li> <li>(c) Class I construction (earthed conductive parts), fixed in position and RCD protection.</li> </ul>	(c) Class II construction (double or reinforced	Convert and edit P
				insulation); or	with Acrobat Pro I
w∃ <b>№</b> ∃ -2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re dit View Window Help				(d) Class I construction	Start Free Trial
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re	eader DC	(†) (1) 349	/ 614	r Land Land Land Land Land Land Land Land	へ に dッ) ENG 11:34 AM 15/08/201
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re dit View Window Help	eader DC	(†) (1) 349	from edge of fixed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide.	r Land Land Land Land Land Land Land Land	、 短 (4)) ENG 11:34 AM 15/08/201 一 の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re dit View Window Help	eader DC	(أ) المن المن المن المن المن المن المن المن	trom edge of tixed continuous horizontal barrie ≥1.25 m wide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV supply; or	r Land Land Land Land Land Land Land Land	、 気 (1) ENG 11:34 AM 15/08/201 一 の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re dit View Window Help	eader DC		trom edge of tixed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV	· □ □ □ □ □	~ 短 40) ENG 11:34 AM - の - の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re lit View Window Help	eader DC	Not permitted	trom edge of tixed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m vide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV supply; or (iii) RCD protection. IPX5	r the the test of	~ 短 40) ENG 11:34 AM - の - の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re dit View Window Help	eader DC	Not permitted IPX8; and specifically for use; and 12 V a.c./30 V d.c.	trom edge of tixed continuous horizontal barrier 21.25 m vida. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV supply; or (iii) RCD protection. IPX5 IPX5 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply;	r → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → →	~ 短 40) ENG 11:34 AM - の - の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re lit View Window Help	clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories Clause 6.3.4.5(a), (b) and (c)-Luminaires, appliances and other	Not permitted IPX8; and specifically for use; and 12 V	trom edge of hxed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV supply; or (iii) RCD protection. IPX5 IPX5 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation), or	P → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → →	~ 短 40) ENG 11:34 AM - の - の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re lit View Window Help	clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories Clause 6.3.4.5(a), (b) and (c)-Luminaires, appliances and other	Not permitted IPX8; and specifically for use; and 12 V a.c.30 V d.c. SELV or PELV supply from source outside	trom edge of tixed continuous horizontal barrier 21.25 m vide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV supply; or (iii) RCD protection. IPX5 IPX5 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced	r → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → →	~ 短 40) ENG 11:34 AM - の - の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re lit View Window Help	clause 6.3.4.4- Switches/accessories Clause 6.3.4.5(a), (b) and (c)-Luminaires, appliances and other	Not permitted IPX8; and specifically for use; and 12 V a.c.30 V d.c. SELV or PELV supply from source outside zone	trom edge of hxed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV mypy; or (iii) RCD protection. IPX5 IPX5 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or (c) Class I construction (earthed conductive parts), fixed in position	r → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → →	~ 短 40) ENG 11:34 AM - の - の
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re dit View Window Help	eader DC nent Provide a state of the state o	Not permitted IPX8; and specifically for use; and 12 V a.c.30 V d.c. SELV or PELV supply from source outside zone	trom edge of hxed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV mypy; or (iii) RCD protection. IPX5 IPX5 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or (c) Class I construction (earthed conductive parts), fixed in position	construction IPX4 IPX4 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) separated supply; (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or (d) Class I construction (earthed conductive parts), and RCD protection. As for Zone 1	Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Re dit View Window Help	eader DC nent  Clause 6.3.4.4— Switches/accessories Clause 6.3.4.5(a).(b) and (c)—Luminaires, appliances and other equipment Clause 6.3.4.5(d)— Heating cable	Not permitted IPX8; and specifically for use; and 12 v a. c.30 V d.c. SELV or PELV supply from source outside zone No earth	trom edge of hxed continuous horizontal barrier ≥1.25 m wide. (c) (i) separated supply; (ii) SELV or PELV supply; or (iii) RCD protection. IPX5 IPX5 and— (a) SELV or PELV supply; (b) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or (c) Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or (c) Class II construction (earthed conductive parts); fixed in position and RCD protection.	r → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → → →	Comment

ome Tools Docume	nt 🖺 🖶 🖂 Q	350	/ 614 🕞 🕂 10		
					Comment
	AS/NZS 3000:2018		344		
		TAB	LE 6.2 (continued)		🛴 Fill & Sign
	Equipment	Zone 0	Zone 1	Zone 2	
	Clause 6.3.4.6- Switchboards	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted	
	* Clause 6.3.4.7— Electricity generation systems	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted	
	<ul> <li>Clause 6.3.4.8— Electricity distributor electrical equipment</li> </ul>		Not permitted	Not permitted	
4	~		15	2.5	Þ
4	2.5	15 202	15 22 20 20 20 20 15		
4	2.5	1.5	Zone 1	LEGEND: = 2 = Zone 0 = Zone 1	Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat PPo DC



6.4.4.1 Degree of protection required

Electrical equipment permitted to be installed in the classified zone shall have at least the following degree of protection:

- (a) In Zone O-IPX8.
- (b) In Zone 1-IPX5.

The requirements for selection and installation of electrical equipment are provided in Table 6.3.

Tools	Document	🖹 🖶 🖂 🔾 🕜 🕑 101 / 181	⊖ ⊕ 124% ▼		
		spa installed in a bathroom.			Comment
		Complete the following table by determ etween a normal socket outlet and the	-		🔔 Fill & Sign
		Water Container	Distance	Reference	
		Bath.			
		Washtubs less than 45 litres.			Þ
		Washtubs over 45 litres.			
		Spa of 6500 litre capacity.			
		Spa of 620 litre capacity.			
					Convert and edit P with Acrobat Pro I
	UE	EENEEG063A Section 4 – Earthing Ve	ersion 1	Page 3 of 181 Last Updated 02/02/2016	Start Free Trial

#### 6.2.4.2 Socket-outlets

Socket-outlets shall not be installed within 0.3 m of the floor of a bathroom, laundry or other similar location where the floor is likely to become wet. Regardless of the degree of protection provided by the equipment, the following requirements apply to the installation of socket-outlets in classified zones: - 0 ×

🗾 3000-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC

		6.2.4.6 Switch	bboarde				^	
				located w	ithin any classified z	one		🥟 Comment
		6.2.4.7 Electr			-			
	*			-	cluding engine-drive	an generator sets		🛴 Fill & Sign
		stand-alone po	ower syster	ns, grid-co	onnected inverter sy any classified zone.	stems and battery		
				ТАВ	LE 6.1			
					ON OF ELECTRICA THER FIXED WATE			
		Equipment	Zone 0	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3		
		Clause 6.2.4.2— Socket-outlets	Not permitted	Not permitted	(a) A shaver outlet; or	(a) <0.3 m not permitted		
					(b) RCD-protected and in a cupboard (no specific IP	(b) ≥0.3 m no IP rating† but shall have—		
4					rating).	(i) RCD protection;	÷	
						(ii) separated supply; or		
						(iii) SELV or PELV supply.		
		Clause 6.2.4.3— Switches/ accessories	Not permitted	Same as Zone 2	<0.3 m not permitted ≥0.3 m IPX4†	<0.3 m not permitted ≥0.3 m—No IP rating†		
						(continued)		
				COF	YRIGHT			Convert and edit PDF with Acrobat Pro DC
								Start Free Trial

lome Tools	Document 📳	🖶 🖂 Q	1	329 / 614	⊖ ⊕ 100%	× 🕂 🛱 📲	$\downarrow$		
Ş					323	AS/NZS 300	00:2018	^	0 -
				TABLE 6	6.1 (continued)	-			🤛 Comment
2		Equipment	Zone 0	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	-		🔔 Fill & Sign
8		Clause 6.2.4.4— Luminaires	IPX7 and specifically for use and SELV or PELV supply	IPX4†	IPX4†; or Class II construction (double or reinforced insulation); or SELV or PELV; or recessed into ceiling	No IP rating†			Law the order
		Clause 6.2.4.5— Other electrical equipment	IPX7 and specifically for use and SELV or PELV supply	IPX4†	IPX4†; or recessed into ceiling	No IP rating†			
		Clause 6.2.4.6— Switchboards	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted			
4	*	Clause 6.2.4.7— Electricity generation systems	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted	Not permitted		ŀ	
		=	Zone 0 Zone 1 0.6 0.6 0.6	2	.4 EGEN	ND: = Zone 0 = Zone 1 = Zone 2 = Zone 3			Convert and edit PDF- with Acrobat Pro DC

6.2.2.2 Other fixed water containers

Two zones (Zones 0 and 2) are classified for fixed water containers other than baths and showers:

(a) Zone O shall be the area of the interior of the water container.

\* (b) Zone 2 for an individual water container with a capacity not exceeding
 40 L, and having fixed water outlets, shall be the area limited by (i) the vertical plane 0.15 m from the internal rim of the water container; and

(ii) the floor and the horizontal plane 0.4 m above the water container.

NOTE: Figure 6.12 shows a typical double bowl sink where the capacity of each container does not exceed 40 L.

\* (c) Zone 2 for water containers having either a capacity exceeding 40 L, or a water outlet through a flexible hose, shall be the area limited by (i) the vertical plane 0.5 m from the internal rim of the water

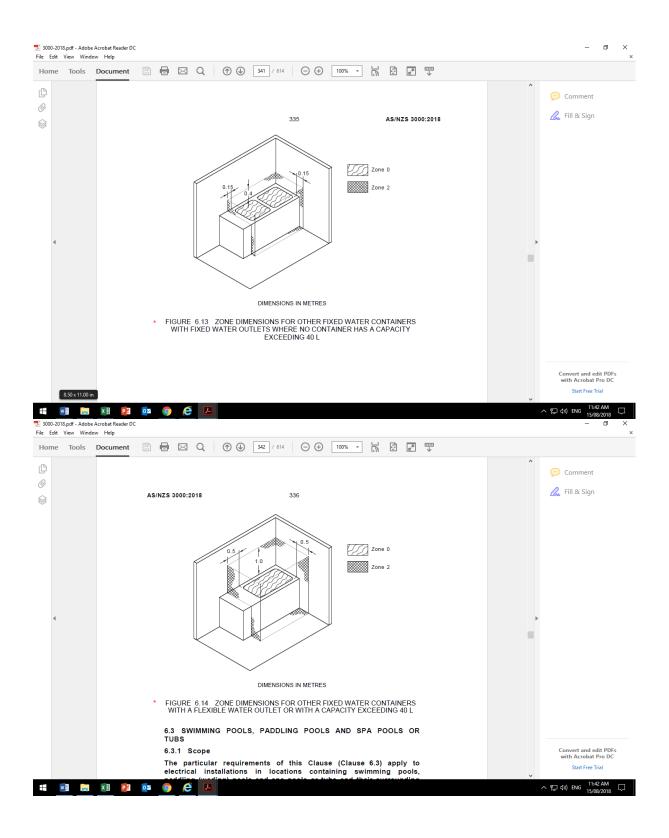
container; and

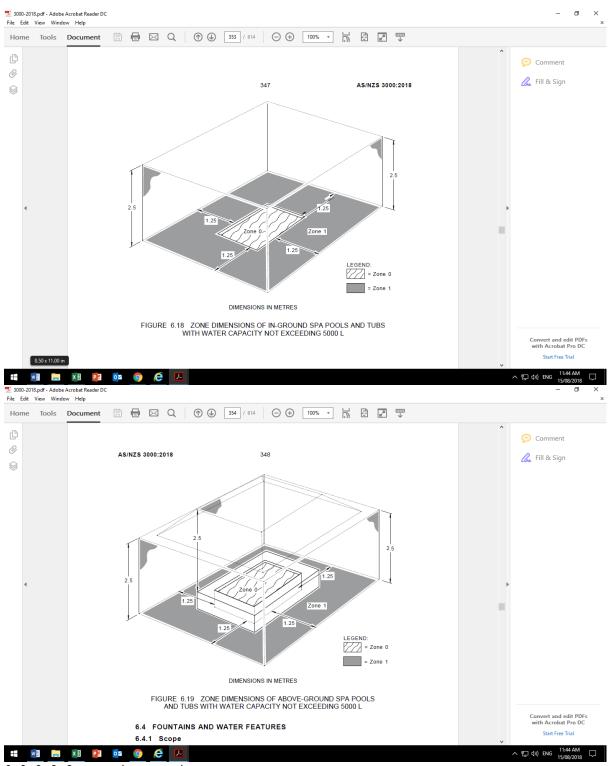
(ii) the floor and the horizontal plane 1.0  $\ensuremath{\mathsf{m}}$  above the water container.

Examples of these zones are shown in Figures 6.13 and 6.14. NOTES:

1 There is no Zone 1 or 3 for these water containers.

2 An example of a water outlet through a flexible hose is a vegetable sprayer.





## 6.3.2.2 Spa pools or tubs

6.3.2.2.1 General

\* Spa pools or tubs with a water capacity not exceeding 680 L shall comply with the requirements of Clause 6.2.

A spa pool that is attached to a swimming or paddling pool shall be considered to be an extension to the swimming or paddling pool. NOTE: Electrical equipment installed behind a fixed panel that provides a degree of protection not less than IPX4, and to which access may only be gained by the use of a tool, would not be considered to be in a classified zone. 6.3.2.2.2 Water capacity exceeding 5000 L
Three zones (Zones 0, 1 and 2) are classified for spa pools or tubs with a capacity exceeding 5000 L, as set out in Clause 6.3.2.1.
6.3.2.2.3 Water capacity not exceeding 5000 L
Two zones (Zones 0 and 1) are classified for spa pools and tubs with a capacity exceeding 680 L and up to and including 5000 L, as set out below:
(a) Zone 0 shall be the area of the interior of the water container.
(b) Zone 1 shall be the area limited by(i) the vertical plane 1.25 m from the internal rim of the water container; and
(ii) the floor, or the surface expected to be occupied by persons, and the horizontal plane 2.50 m above the floor or surface.
Examples of these zones are given in Figures 6.17 to 6.19.

# Page 104

## INTRODUCTION

Although the earthing system does not affect the actual operation of appliances or equipment, it is the most important part of the installation in its protective role against the risk of -

\_\_\_\_\_ and

Leakage current and Electrocution

#### Refer to AS/NZS 3000 Section 1, clause 1.4 - Definitions.

clause Exposed conductive part:

An exposed conductive part is a part of electrical equipment which -

1.4.62 Exposed conductive part

A conductive part of electrical equipment that-

(a) can be touched with the standard test finger as specified in AS/NZS 3100; and

(b) is not a live part but can become live if basic insulation fails.

clause - Extraneous conductive part:

An extraneous conductive part is a conductive part that -

1.4.63 Extraneous conductive part

A conductive part that does not form part of an electrical installation but that may be at the electrical potential of a local earth.

2 examples of extraneous conductive parts are:

<sup>1.4.63</sup> Extraneous conductive part

A conductive part that does not form part of an electrical installation

but that may be at the electrical potential of a local earth. NOTE: Examples of extraneous conductive parts include the following:

- (a) Metal waste, water or gas pipe from outside.
- (b) Cooling or heating system parts.
- (c) Metal or reinforced concrete building components.
- (d) Steel-framed structure.
- (e) Floors and walls of reinforced concrete without further surface treatment.
- (f) Tiled surfaces, conductive wall coverings.
- (g) Conductive fittings in washrooms, bathrooms, lavatories, toilets, etc.
- (h) Metallized papers

#### **REASONS FOR EARTHING**

A fundamental safety principle of electrical installations is the protection of -

\_\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_\_ against the danger that may arise from contact with exposed conductive parts which may become live under fault conditions - known as \_\_\_\_\_\_ contact. Earthing also provides \_\_\_\_\_\_ and in doing so ensures the supply actives and neutral are maintained at a fixed potential with respect to earth

Persons / Equipment /Indirect/Leakage current flowing path to earth

#### EARTHING TERMS

Refer to definitions: clause - Accessible, readily:

1.4.3 Accessible, readily

\* Capable of being reached quickly and without climbing over or removing obstructions, or using a movable ladder, and in any case not more than 2.0 m above the ground, floor or platform.

An object is deemed to be readily accessible if it is capable of being reached quickly and easily and is less than \_\_\_\_\_\_ metres above the ground, floor or platform. 2.0 m

Refer to definitions: **clause** - Earthed: 1.4.47 Earthed Connected to the general mass of earth, and where relevant, the supply neutral in accordance with the appropriate requirements of this Standard.

#### Refer to definitions: clause - Earthed situation:

An earthed situation is anywhere a person may be able to touch exposed conductive parts and, at the same time, come into contact with earth or any other material that may provide a path to earth.

## 1.4.48 Earthed situation

A situation wherein there is a reasonable chance of a person touching exposed conductive parts and, at the same time, coming into contact with earth or with any conducting medium that may be in electrical contact with the earth or through which a circuit may be completed to earth. The following situations are deemed to be earthed situations:

Examples of earthed situations include -

□all parts of - \_\_\_\_\_,\_\_\_\_,

any outdoor equipment mounted within \_\_\_\_\_ metres of the ground

within \_\_\_\_\_ metres of the ground, floor or platform in rooms containing socket outlets, where a person may be able to make simultaneous contact with exposed conductive parts of equipment and exposed conductive parts of appliances plugged into socket outlets

within \_\_\_\_\_ metres in any direction from a conductive floor, permanently damp surface, metallic conduit or building materials on which a person may stand.

## 1.4.48 Earthed situation

A situation wherein there is a reasonable chance of a person touching exposed conductive parts and, at the same time, coming into contact with earth or with any conducting medium that may be in electrical contact with the earth or through which a circuit may be completed to earth. The following situations are deemed to be earthed situations: (a) Within 2.5 m in any direction from a conductive floor (such as earthen, concrete, tile or brickwork flooring), permanently damp surface, metallic conduit or pipe, metallic cable sheath or armour. or any other conductive material on which a person may stand. (b) External to a building. Exception: An isolated piece of equipment, such as a luminaire that is mounted more than 2.5 m from the ground and from any exposed conductive part or other conductive material that is in contact with earth, is not deemed to be in an earthed situation. (c) Within 2.5 m of the ground, floor or platform in rooms containing socket-outlets, the earthing terminals of which are earthed, and

socket-outlets, the earthing terminals of which are earthed, and where there is a reasonable chance of a person making simultaneous contact with any exposed conductive part of electrical equipment and any exposed conductive part of an appliance connected to any of the socket-outlets.

(d) All parts of a bathroom, laundry, lavatory, toilet or kitchen.

List three examples of a conductive floor - \_\_\_\_\_

Within 2.5 m in any direction from a conductive floor (such as earthen, concrete, tile or brickwork flooring), permanently damp surface, metallic conduit or pipe, metallic cable sheath or armour, or any other conductive material on which a person may stand.

Home	Tools Document $\square$ $\square$ $\square$ $Q$ $(\uparrow)$ $(\downarrow)$ $(106 / 181)$ $\bigcirc$ $(\downarrow)$ $(124\% + )$ $\square$ $\square$ $\square$ $\square$	
C	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Comment
0	Section 4 - Earthing	🔔 Fill & Sign
	MAIN EARTHIG CONDUCTOR	Con Thi & Sign
	Refer to definitions: clause Main earthing conductor:	
	The main earthing conductor is connected between	
	From supply transformer	
	N	
	Main switchboard	P
	Protected link Consumers Earth link neutral link	
	Figure 1	
	Clause 3.8.1 - Identification - General:	Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC

1.4.81 Main earthing conductor

A conductor connecting the main earthing terminal/connection or bar to the earth electrode or to the earthing system of the source of supply.

Clause 3.8.1 - Identification - General:

The insulation colour of the main earthing conductor shall be \_\_\_\_\_\_ 3. 8. 1 General

Installation wiring conductors shall be clearly identified to indicate their intended function as active, neutral, earthing or equipotential bonding conductors.

	CONDUCTOR COLOU Function Protective earth Equipotential bonding Neutral Active NOTES: 1 When green/yellow is use and not more than 70% covering the remainder of 2 Recommended colours for (a) Red or brown for sin (b) Red, white or blue fo 3 Where colours are used	r actives are—	Comment
	Function      Protective earth     Equipotential bonding     Neutral      Active      NOTES:     1 When green/yellow is use     and not more than 70%     covering the remainder of     2 Recommended colours for     (a) Red or brown for sin     (b) Red, white or blue fc     3 Where colours are used	Insulation colour           Green/yellow           Green/yellow           Black or light blue           Any colour other than green, yellow, green/yellow, black or light blue           ed, one colour shall cover not less than 30% of the surface area, with the other colour the surface are—	🔔 Fill & Sign
4	Protective earth Equipotential bonding Neutral Active NOTES: 1 When green/yellow is use and not more than 70% covering the remainder of 2 Recommended colours for (a) Red or brown for sin (b) Red, white or blue for 3 Where colours are used	Green/yellow Green/yellow Black or light blue Any colour other than green, yellow, green/yellow, black or light blue ed, one colour shall cover not less than 30% of the surface area, with the other colour the surface. r actives are—	Grand Control of Contr
4	Equipotential bonding Neutral Active NOTES: 1 When green/yellow is use and not more than 70% covering the remainder of 2 Recommended colours for (a) Red or brown for sin (b) Red, white or blue fo 3 Where colours are used	Green/yellow Black or light blue Any colour other than green, yellow, green/yellow, black or light blue ed, one colour shall cover not less than 30% of the surface area, with the other colour the surface area.	
4	Neutral Active NOTES: 1 When green/yellow is use and not more than 70% covering the remainder of 2 Recommended colours for (a) Red or brown for sin (b) Red, white or blue for 3 Where colours are used	Black or light blue Any colour other than green, yellow, green/yellow, black or light blue ed, one colour shall cover not less than 30% of the surface area, with the other colour the surface area.	
4	Active NOTES: 1 When green/yellow is use and not more than 70% covering the remainder of 2 Recommended colours for (a) Red or brown for sin (b) Red, white or blue for 3 Where colours are used	Any colour other than green, yellow, green/yellow, black or light blue ed, one colour shall cover not less than 30% of the surface area, with the other colour the surface area.	
4	NOTES: 1 When green/yellow is use and not more than 70% covering the remainder of 2 Recommended colours for (a) Red or brown for sin (b) Red, white or blue for 3 Where colours are used	green/yellow, black or light blue ed, one colour shall cover not less than 30% of the surface area, with the other colour the surface.	
۲	When green/yellow is use and not more than 70% covering the remainder of 2 Recommended colours for (a) Red or brown for sin (b) Red, white or blue for 3 Where colours are used	of the surface area, with the other colour f the surface. r actives are—	
	European cable identific the same wiring enclosure * 4 In New Zealand domestic neutral conductors is black 3.8.2 Colour identification	d for the identification of cable cores, Zealand cable identification colours and atalon colours shall not be combined within e or the same multi-core cable. I installations, the only bermitted colour for <b>NZ</b>	•
	Colour identification by sleev corresponding to those listed in as a means of identification for t	Table 3.4 at each termination, may be used	
	<ul><li>(a) Conductors with black of conductors.</li></ul>	or light blue insulation used as active	
		COPYRIGHT	Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Minimum size: (of the main earthing conductor) The minimum allowable size for a copper main earthing conductor is \_\_\_\_\_

## 5.3.3.2 Main earthing conductor

Where the main earthing conductor connects the main earth terminal to an electrode (arrangement depicted in Figure 5.1), the conductor shall be determined from Table 5.1 in relation to the cross-sectional area of the largest active conductor of the consumer mains.

The cross-sectional area of such a copper main earthing conductor shall be not less than  $4 \text{ mm}_2$  and need not be greater than 120 mm<sub>2</sub>.

5.3.3 Earthing conductor size (cross-sectional area)

5.3.3.1 Protective earthing conductors

5.3.3.1.1 General

The cross-sectional area of a protective earthing conductor shall ensure-

(a) adequate current-carrying capacity for prospective fault currents for a time at least equal to the operating time of the associated overcurrent protective device;

(b) appropriate earth fault-loop impedance (see Clause 5.7);

(c) adequate mechanical strength and resistance to external influences; and

(d) for parts of the protective earthing conductor that do not consist of cables, or parts of cables, that there is an allowance for the subsequent deterioration in conductivity that may reasonably be expected.

ne Tools D	Document	- 🖶 🖂 Q. 🛛 🕀 🕓	284 / 614 - +	100% 🗸 📑 🔂 🐺 🖵		
		AS/NZS 3008.1 serie	00		^	
				andard sizes, conductors of		⊝ Comment
		the nearest higher stands				
				joints should be considered		🔔 Fill & Sign
		(see the AS/NZS 3008.1	series).			
			TABLE 5.1			
		MINIMUM CO	OPPER EARTHING CO	NDUCTOR SIZE		
			Nominal size of copp			
		Nominal size of active conductor		m²		
		mm²	With copper active conductors	With aluminium active conductors		
		1	1*	_		
		1.5 2.5	1.5* 2.5			
		4	2.5	_		
		6 10	2.5 4	_		
4		16	6	4	Þ	
		25	6	6		
		35 50	10 16	6 10		
		70	25	10		
		95 120	25 35	16 25		
		150	50	25		
		185 240	70 95	35 50		
		300	120	70		
		400	≥120†	≥95†		
		500 630	≥120† ≥120†	≥95† ≥120†		
		>630	≥25% of active size†	≥25% of active size†		
				d where incorporated in a		Convert and edit PDFs
			r flexible cord, other thar ause 5.3.3.4, Items (b) and	i a lift travelling cable, in (c).		with Acrobat Pro DC
		† A larger earthing co	nductor may be required to	satisfy Clause 5.3.3.1.1		Start Free Trial
0-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac		e 🗿 🤌 🔼			v	へ デー (1)) ENG 12:16 PM 15/08/2018 一 ロ
0-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac Edit View Window	crobat Reader DC		283 / 614 🕒 🕀		×	스 루그 વ») ENG 15/08/2018
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help		283 / 614		× *	스 루그 વ») ENG 15/08/2018
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	B ► Q • • •	283 / 614 ○ ← ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d	100% - E E E F		~ <sup>*</sup> <sub>20</sub> (9)) ENG 15/08/2018 — ⊙
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-	283 / 614 O + concomprises a num conductor shall be d sectional areas of the i	100% - La		스 루그 વ») ENG 15/08/2018
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduction	283 / 614 ⊙ € ctor comprises a numb conductor shall be d sectional areas of the i stor to be protected.	er of conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming	*	
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduct Where the summation of with the nominal size	283 / 614 ○ ⊕ ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the itor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct	100% Conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the	*	Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu- in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deter	283 / 614 ○ ⊕ ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the itor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct	100% • 10 • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		Comment
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduction.	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numb conductor shall be d sectional areas of the stor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduc mined in relation to the	ter of conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly for given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active		- 0 Comment
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu- in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduct Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame	283 / 614 ○ ↔ conductor shall be d sectional areas of the i tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire	ter of conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active onductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium		Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-sec cable component, frame in accordance with Clau:	283 / 614 Corductor shall be d sectional areas of the istor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any co work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su	100% Image: A set of the set of t		- 0 Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-sec cable component, frame in accordance with Clau:	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the i tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be sur an that determined for	100% Conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium ch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor		- 0 Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-ser cable component, frame in accordance with Clau medium is not greater th	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the i tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be sur an that determined for	100% Conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium ch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor		Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame in accordance with Claumedium is not greater th in accordance with this C 5.3.3.1.3 Calculation	283 / 614 ○ € concording to a nume conductor shall be de sectional areas of the i tor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any co work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su uan that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2)	100% Conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium ch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor		Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-sec cable component, frame in accordance with this C <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-sec less than the value deter	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the it tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determinec	100% • In conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium ch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor 2).		Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-sec cable component, frame in accordance with Clau medium is not greater th in accordance with this O <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-sec less than the value dete for disconnection times r	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the it tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determinec	100% • In conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium sch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor 2).		Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-sec cable component, frame in accordance with this C <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-sec less than the value deter	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the it tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determinec	100% • In conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium ch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor 2).		Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active condu in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross- the largest active conduc Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be deten conductor. The minimum cross-sec cable component, frame in accordance with Clau medium is not greater th in accordance with this O <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-sec less than the value dete for disconnection times r	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numt conductor shall be d sectional areas of the it tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determinec	100% • In conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium sch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor 2).		Comment
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended by the component, frame in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium cross-section the summation of the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the Claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the in accordance with the claumedium is not greater the greater the summation of the greater the summation of the greater the summation of the greater the greater the summation of the greater the summation of the greater the greater the summation of the greater the greater the greater the summation of the greater the greater the greater the summation of the greater	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numb conductor shall be d sectional areas of the i tor to be protected. f cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su- uan that determined for lause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determined primined by the following tot less than 0.1 s but re-	100% • In conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly or given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium sch that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor 2).		- 0 Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction is a set of the active conduction. Where the active conduction of the cross-the largest active conduction. Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended to a set of the active conductor. The minimum cross-set is a conductor. The minimum cross-set is a conductor of the cross-set is a set of the active conduction. The minimum cross-set is a conduction of the cross-set is a set of the active conductor. The minimum cross-set is a conduction of the cross-set is a set of the active conduction. The minimum cross-set is a conductive conduction. $S = \sqrt{(P_{t}^{2}/K^{2})}$ where ) S = cross-sectional I = the value of th	283 / 614 Corrector comprises a numbre conductor shall be de descritonal areas of the istor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas sof the active conduct mined in relation to the conduct mined in relation to the clonal area of any cowork or catenary wire set 5.3.2.2, shall be suu an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determined by the following the state of protective ear e fault current in ampression and the section of th	100% Image: Imag		- 0 Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be determined on the conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame accordance with this Conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame of the conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame of the conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame of the conductor. <b>5</b> = $\sqrt{(r^2 t / K^2)}$ where $)$ S = cross-sectional $l$ = the value of the that would flow	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numb conductor shall be d sectional areas of the is- tor to be protected. I cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su ian that determined for lause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determined ermined by the followin ot less than 0.1 s but r l area of protective ear e fault current in amp w through the overcur	100% Conductors, connected etermined in relation to the ndividual conductors forming does not correspond exactly for given in Table 5.1, the nearest larger size of active conductive wiring enclosure, used as an earthing medium that the impedance of the a copper earthing conductor 2). by calculation shall be not ng equation (applicable only tot exceeding 5 s). 5.1 thing conductor, in mm <sup>2</sup> peres (for a.c. r.m.s. value) rent protective device of the		- 0 Comment
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be determined on the conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame accordance with this Conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame of the conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame of the conductor. The minimum cross-see cable component, frame of the conductor. <b>5</b> = $\sqrt{(r^2 t / K^2)}$ where $)$ S = cross-sectional $l$ = the value of the that would flow	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numb conductor shall be d sectional areas of the is- tor to be protected. I cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be su ian that determined for lause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determined ermined by the followin ot less than 0.1 s but r l area of protective ear e fault current in amp w through the overcur	100% Image: Imag		- 0 Comment
-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct. Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended to the detended of the conductor shall be detended to the conductor. The minimum cross-section accordance with Clause accordance with Clause medium is not greater the in accordance with this Co. <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-section accordance with the clause accordance with Clause accordance with the clause accordance accorda	283 / 614 Corrector comprises a numbre conductor shall be described areas of the istor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any cowork or catenary wire set 5.3.2.2, shall be suu an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determined by the following the state of protective ear e fault current in amy withrough the overcur ned in the event of ting time of the over	100%       Image: Conductors, connected         terr of conductors, connected         etermined in relation to the         ndividual conductors forming         does not correspond exactly         for given in Table 5.1, the         nearest larger size of active         onductive wiring enclosure,         used as an earthing medium         that the impedance of the         a copper earthing conductor         2).         by calculation shall be not         ng equation (applicable only         iot exceeding 5 s):         5.1         thing conductor, in mm <sup>2</sup> peres (for a.c. r.m.s. value)         rent protective device of the         a short-circuit of negligible         current protective device in		- 0 Comment
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct. Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended to the detended of the conductor shall be detended to the conductor. The minimum cross-section accordance with Clause accordance with Clause medium is not greater the in accordance with this Co. <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-section accordance with the clause accordance with Clause accordance with the clause accordance accorda	283 / 614 Ctor comprises a numb conductor shall be d sectional areas of the i- tor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any c work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be suu- work or catenary wire se 5.3.2.2, shall be suu- an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2) tional area determined armined by the following tool less than 0.1 s but r area of protective ear e fault current in army w through the overcur- nend in the event of	100%       Image: Conductors, connected         terr of conductors, connected         etermined in relation to the         ndividual conductors forming         does not correspond exactly         for given in Table 5.1, the         nearest larger size of active         onductive wiring enclosure,         used as an earthing medium         that the impedance of the         a copper earthing conductor         2).         by calculation shall be not         ng equation (applicable only         iot exceeding 5 s):         5.1         thing conductor, in mm <sup>2</sup> peres (for a.c. r.m.s. value)         rent protective device of the         a short-circuit of negligible         current protective device in		- 0 Comment
)-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct. Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended to the detended of the conductor shall be detended to the conductor. The minimum cross-section accordance with Clause accordance with Clause medium is not greater the in accordance with this Co. <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-section accordance with the clause accordance with Clause accordance with the clause accordance accorda	283 / 614 Corrector comprises a numbre conductor shall be described areas of the istor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any cowork or catenary wire set 5.3.2.2, shall be suu an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determined by the following the state of protective ear e fault current in amy withrough the overcur ned in the event of ting time of the over	100%       Image: Conductors, connected         terr of conductors, connected         etermined in relation to the         ndividual conductors forming         does not correspond exactly         for given in Table 5.1, the         nearest larger size of active         onductive wiring enclosure,         used as an earthing medium         that the impedance of the         a copper earthing conductor         2).         by calculation shall be not         ng equation (applicable only         iot exceeding 5 s):         5.1         thing conductor, in mm <sup>2</sup> peres (for a.c. r.m.s. value)         rent protective device of the         a short-circuit of negligible         current protective device in		- 0 Comment
0-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct. Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended to the detended of the conductor shall be detended to the conductor. The minimum cross-section accordance with Clause accordance with Clause medium is not greater the in accordance with this Co. <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-section accordance with the clause accordance with Clause accordance with the clause accordance accorda	283 / 614 Corrector comprises a numbre conductor shall be described areas of the istor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas as of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any cowork or catenary wires set 5.3.2.2, shall be suu an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2) tional area determined commined by the following the state of protective ear e fault current in any w through the overcure need in the event of t	100%       Image: Conductors, connected         terr of conductors, connected         etermined in relation to the         ndividual conductors forming         does not correspond exactly         for given in Table 5.1, the         nearest larger size of active         onductive wiring enclosure,         used as an earthing medium         that the impedance of the         a copper earthing conductor         2).         by calculation shall be not         ng equation (applicable only         iot exceeding 5 s):         5.1         thing conductor, in mm <sup>2</sup> peres (for a.c. r.m.s. value)         rent protective device of the         a short-circuit of negligible         current protective device in		- 0 Comment
0-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct. Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended to the detended of the conductor shall be detended to the conductor. The minimum cross-section accordance with Clause accordance with Clause medium is not greater the in accordance with this Co. <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-section accordance with the clause accordance with Clause accordance with the clause accordance accorda	283 / 614 Corrector comprises a numbre conductor shall be described areas of the istor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any cowork or catenary wire set 5.3.2.2, shall be suu an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2 tional area determined by the following the state of protective ear e fault current in amy withrough the overcur ned in the event of ting time of the over	100%       Image: Conductors, connected         terr of conductors, connected         etermined in relation to the         ndividual conductors forming         does not correspond exactly         for given in Table 5.1, the         nearest larger size of active         onductive wiring enclosure,         used as an earthing medium         that the impedance of the         a copper earthing conductor         2).         by calculation shall be not         ng equation (applicable only         iot exceeding 5 s):         5.1         thing conductor, in mm <sup>2</sup> peres (for a.c. r.m.s. value)         rent protective device of the         a short-circuit of negligible         current protective device in		Convert and edit PDFs
0-2018.pdf - Adobe Ac dit View Window	crobat Reader DC Help	Where the active conduction in parallel, the earthing summation of the cross-the largest active conduct. Where the summation of with the nominal size conductor shall be detended to the detended of the conductor shall be detended to the conductor. The minimum cross-section accordance with Clause accordance with Clause medium is not greater the in accordance with this Co. <b>5.3.1.3</b> Calculation The minimum cross-section accordance with the clause accordance with Clause accordance with the clause accordance accorda	283 / 614 Corrector comprises a numbre conductor shall be described areas of the istor to be protected. If cross-sectional areas as of the active conduct mined in relation to the ctional area of any cowork or catenary wires set 5.3.2.2, shall be suu an that determined for clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2) tional area determined commined by the following the state of protective ear e fault current in any w through the overcure need in the event of t	100%       Image: Conductors, connected         terr of conductors, connected         etermined in relation to the         ndividual conductors forming         does not correspond exactly         for given in Table 5.1, the         nearest larger size of active         onductive wiring enclosure,         used as an earthing medium         that the impedance of the         a copper earthing conductor         2).         by calculation shall be not         ng equation (applicable only         iot exceeding 5 s):         5.1         thing conductor, in mm <sup>2</sup> peres (for a.c. r.m.s. value)         rent protective device of the         a short-circuit of negligible         current protective device in		← (1) ENG 15/08/2018 — の ○ Comment ② Fill & Sign

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Resistance of main earthing conductor: 5.5.1.4 Resistance

The resistance of the main earthing conductor, measured between the main earthing terminal/connection or bar and the earth electrode, including the connection to the earth electrode, shall be not more than 0.5 Ohm

lome	Tools	Docum	ent	Ð		Q			434 /	614	Θ	$\oplus$	100%	*		+++ +++	u <sup>20</sup>	¥		
e l																			^	😑 Comment
2																				
*				AS/	NZS 3000:2	018				4	28									🛴 Fill & Sign
									т	ABLE	8.2									
					MA	XIMUI	AT 80	UES ( % RA MPEDA	TED C	URR	ENT F	RELAT	ING '	TO Z		UITS				
						Cond			С	ircuit b	reaker	s			Fu	ses				
					Protective	SI	ze				Disc	onnecti		es						
					device rating,	Activo	Earth	0.4 s the Type B MCB Type C MCB Ty	0.4 s		5 s HRC fuses									
					amps	mm <sup>2</sup>	mm <sup>2</sup>	Rphe	Re	Rphe	Re	Rphe	Re	Rphe	Re	Rphe	Re			
									1	Maximu	ım fina	l subcir	cuit re	sistan	ce, Ω					
4					6 10 10	1.0 1.0 1.5	1.0 1.0 1.5	6.1 3.7 3.7	3.1 1.8 1.8	3.3 2.0 2.0	1.6 1.0 1.0	2.0 1.2 1.2	1.0 0.6 0.6	7.4 4.1 4.1	3.7 2.0 2.0	9.8 5.9 5.9	4.9 2.9 2.9			
					16 16 20	1.5 2.5 2.5	1.5 2.5 2.5	2.3 2.3 1.8	1.2 1.2 0.9	1.2 1.2 1.0	0.6 0.6 0.5	0.7 0.7 0.6	0.4 0.4 0.3	2.0 2.0 1.3	1.0 1.0 0.7	3.2 3.2 2.3	1.6 1.6 1.1			
					25 32	4.0 4.0	2.5 2.5	1.5 1.2	0.9 0.7	0.8 0.6	0.5 0.4	0.5 0.4	0.3 0.2	1.0 0.8	0.6 0.5	1.7 1.4	1.1 0.9		ł.	
					40 50 63	6.0 10.0 16.0	2.5 4.0 6.0	0.9 0.7 0.6	0.6 0.5 0.4	0.5 0.4 0.3	0.3 0.3 0.2	0.3 0.2 0.2	0.2 0.2 0.1	0.6 0.5 0.4	0.4 0.3 0.3	1.0 0.8 0.6	0.7 0.6 0.4			
					NOTES:															
				*	1 The val 64% × Z	ues, wh Z₅ in Tab	ich hav le 8.1.	e been	rounde	d to on	e decii	mal plac	e, are	calcul	ated u	ising F	R <sub>phe</sub> as			
				*	2 64% tal subcircu tests at	kes into uit) × 80°	accour % assur	nt deem nes that	ed red condu	uction v	values	of 80%	× Zs (1	typical	value	for th	e final			Convert and edit PE
				*	3 Table B of Claus Paragra	1 gives ses 1.5.5	earth fa 5.3, 5.7 .2. The	ult loop and 8.3	route le	ingths f iutomat ly with	or final ic disco Table 8	subcirco nnectio 2 and r	uits wil n of su nay be	II satisf upply fo used	y the r or the o as an a	equire conditi alterna	ments ons of tive to			with Acrobat Pro D Start Free Trial

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Connection to earth electrode:

When a main earthing conductor is connected to an earth electrode, four requirements must be satisfied, these are -

□	 	 	
□			

## 5.5.1.2 Connection to earth electrode

The connection of the main earthing conductor to the earth electrode shall-

(a) be accessible for visual inspection and for the purposes of testing; NOTES:

1 Where necessary, access by means of an underground pit with its cover accessible above ground is considered acceptable, provided adequate space is available for the connection of test leads and the pit is suitably identified as to its purpose.

2 Where the reinforcing steel is used as the earth electrode, this testing condition is deemed to be satisfied by the provision of a test point on the main earthing electrode.

(b) be made by means of a suitable device, in accordance with the manufacturer's specification, that provides adequate electrical conductivity;

(c) provide protection against mechanical damage likely to occur to the main earthing conductor or the connection to the electrode at the

location, in accordance with Clause 5.5.5.2; and (d) be suitably protected against corrosion in accordance with Clause 5, 5, 5, 3,

#### Refer to Section 5: clause - General:

The connection of the electrical installation earthing system to the general mass of earth shall be achieved by means of an \_\_\_\_\_\_. Earth electrode

# 5.3.6.1 General

The connection of the electrical installation earthing system to the general mass of earth shall be achieved by means of an earth electrode.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Types:

The following types of earth electrode may be used -

Figures 2 and 3 show the requirements in relation to rod and strip earth electrodes.

5.3.6.2 Types

Materials and dimensions of earth electrodes shall be selected to withstand corrosion and to have adequate mechanical strength - o ×

🗾 3000-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC

Steel s	ACCEPTABLE	ABLE 5.2 EARTH ELECTRODES Minimum dimensions	Minimum surface treatment thickness	🔏 Fill & Sign
steel s	Surface treatment	Minimum dimensions	surface treatment	1946 - An 1949
Steel s	Vert	dimensions	surface treatment	
* s		ical electrodes		
* s	Copper clad			
		Ø12 mm circular rod	250 μm	
	Copper plated	Ø12 mm circular rod	250 µm	
c	tainless (including lad with stainless)	Ø12 mm circular rod	500 µm	
	Hot dipped galvanized	Ø16 mm circular rod	63 µm	
	Hot dipped galvanized	Section with minimum cross- sectional area of 200 mm <sup>2</sup> and with no part less than 3 mm thick	63 µm	Þ
Non-ferrous (excluding aluminium)	Solid	12 mm	N/A	
	Horizonta	al (strip) electrodes		
Copper rod	Solid	Ø7 mm circular	N/A	
Copper strip	Solid	25 mm × 1.6 mm	N/A	
Copper pipe	Bare	Ø15 mm circular × 2.45 mm wall thickness	N/A	
Copper cable	Bare	25 mm <sup>2</sup>	N/A	
* Steel pipe	Hot dipped galvanized	Ø20 mm circular × 3 mm wall thickness	63 µm	
Steel strip	Hot dipped galvanized	40 mm × 3 mm	63 µm	Convert and edit PD

ome Tool	Window Help ols Document 🖺 🖶 🖂 Q, 🕜 🕑 107 / 181 🕞 🕁 124% 🗸 🙀 🔛 🐺		
\$	•	^	🗭 Comment
~	Figures 2 and 3 show the requirements in relation to rod and strip earth electrodes.		
4	Main earth conductor Minimum acceptable diameter = Minimum depth in ground = Figure 2 Figure 3		
	Strip electrodes must be buried to a minimum depth of		
	Refer to Section 5: <u>clause</u> - Location:		
	In general, earth electrodes shall be located in a position –		
			Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC
			Start Free Trial

5.3.6.3 Installation

Vertical-type earth electrodes shall be driven to a minimum depth of-

(a) in Australia, 1.2 m; and

(b) in New Zealand, 1.8 m.

Strip-type earth electrodes buried in a horizontal trench shall be laid at a depth having not less than 0.5 m cover and with a minimum horizontal length of-

(i) in Australia, 3 m; and A(ii) in New Zealand, 7.5 m

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Location: In general, earth electrodes shall be located in a position –

5.3.6.4 Location

Earth electrodes shall be installed in a location that satisfies the following conditions:

(a) The electrode maintains effective contact with moist soil that is not subject to excessive drying out.

NOTE: This condition is deemed to be satisfied by locating the electrode-

(a) external to the building in ground that is exposed to the weather; or

(b) in other locations where the ground remains moist because of soil

conditions or covers that reduce loss of moisture.

(b) The electrode is separated from conductive enclosures of other buried services, such as water, gas, telecommunications and flammable

liquid, in order to reduce possible electrolytic action affecting the electrode or the other service. NOTE: Separation distances are specified in Table 3.7. (c) The main earthing conductor connection to an electrode is accessible, in accordance with Clause 5.5.1.2. The location of the earth electrode shall be identified at the main switchboard. What is the recommended separation between an earth electrode and other services such as water, gas, flammable liquid and telecommunications? Why is this separation recommended?

b) The electrode is separated from conductive enclosures of other buried services, such as water, gas, telecommunications and flammable liquid, in order to reduce possible electrolytic action affecting the electrode or the other service

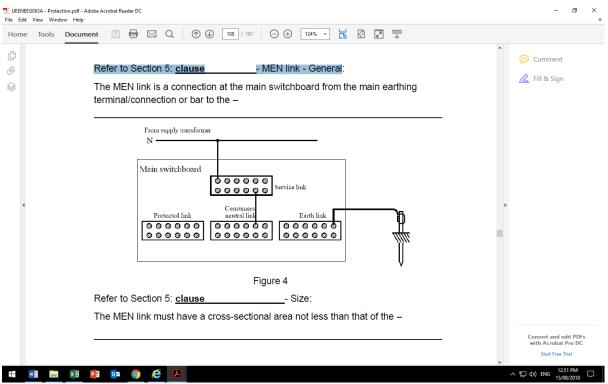
The abbreviation MEN stands for \_\_\_\_

1.4.83 Multiple earthed neutral (MEN) system

\* A system of earthing in which the parts of an installation, required under this Standard to be earthed, are connected to the general mass of earth and, in addition, are connected within the installation to the neutral conductor of the supply system or the PEN conductor

Refer to definitions: **clause** - Multiple earthed neutral system 1.4.83 Multiple earthed neutral (MEN) system

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - MEN link - General 5.3.5 MEN connection 5.3.5.1 General In every electrical installation there shall be an MEN connection (also known as the MEN link) at the main switchboard.



#### Earth

Refer to Section 5: clause - Size:

The MEN link must have a cross-sectional area not less than that of the -

### 5.3.5.2 Size

The MEN connection shall be a conductor complying with Clause 5.3.2 and have a cross-sectional area capable of carrying the maximum current that it may be required to carry under short-circuit conditions. The minimum size shall be-

(a) not less than the current-carrying capacity of the main neutral conductor; or

(b) for switchboards described in Clause 2.5.5 as rated at 800 A or more per phase, as determined for a protective earthing conductor from Table 5.1 or by calculation.

Where consumers' mains are not protected on the supply side by short circuit protective devices the MEN link shall have a cross-sectional area not less than that of the

Exceptions: The minimum size of the MEN connection need not exceed that of the main earthing conductor in the following circumstances: 1 Where short-circuit protection is provided on the supply side of the consumer mains.

2 Where the earthing of an enclosure containing consumer mains not provided with short-circuit protection on the supply side is made by connection directly to the neutral bar in accordance with Clause 5.5.3.5.

3 Where double insulation of the consumer mains conductors is

maintained up to the supply terminal/s of the service protective device/s, and short-circuit protection is provided by such device/s. NOTE: An electricity distributor's upstream service protective device may provide short-circuit protection of consumer mains.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Identification:

#### 5.3.5.3 Identification

Where the MEN connection is insulated, the insulation shall be coloured green or in a combination of green and yellow, in accordance with Clause 3.8

🗾 3000-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC – ø × File Edit View Window Help Home Tools Document  $\square$   $\blacksquare$   $\square$  Q O O II2 / 614  $\bigcirc$  O O II00%  $\checkmark$   $\blacksquare$  II II  $\blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$ 2 Switchboard wiring is not regarded as installation wiring but the AS/NZS 3439 series and AS/NZS 61439 series restrict the green/yellow combination to the identification of earthing conductors. ſ₿ Comment Ŏ 🔏 Fill & Sign TABLE 3.4  $\otimes$ CONDUCTOR COLOURS FOR INSTALLATION WIRING Function Insulation colour Protective earth Green/yellow Equipotential bonding Green/yellow Black or light blue Neutral Any colour other than green, yellow, Active green/yellow, black or light blue NOTES When green/yellow is used, one colour shall cover not less than 30% and not more than 70% of the surface area, with the other colour covering the remainder of the surface. Recommended colours for actives are-(a) Red or brown for single-phase; or (a) ked of brown for single-phase; of (b) Red, white or blue for multiphase. Where colours are used for the identification of cable cores, Australian and New Zealand cable identification colours and European cable identification colours shall not be combined within the same wiring enclosure or the same multi-core cable. 4 In New Zealand domestic installations, the only permitted colour for neutral conductors is black. NZ 3.8.2 Colour identification Colour identification by sleeving or other means Colour identification by sleeving or other means, using colours corresponding to those listed in Table 3.4 at each termination, may be used as a means of identification for the following purposes: (a) Conductors with black or light blue insulation used as active conductors. Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC Start Free Trial (小) ENG 1:05 PM

### 👯 🕺 🥽 🗵 📴 🔯 🧔 😂 🔼

3.8.2 Colour identification

1 Colour identification by sleeving or other means Colour identification by sleeving or other means, using colours corresponding to those listed in Table 3.4 at each termination, may be used as a means of identification for the following purposes: (a) Conductors with black or light blue insulation used as active conductors. or (b) Conductors with other than green, yellow, green/yellow, black or light blue insulation used as neutral conductors. or (c) Conductors within multi-core cables with other than green, yellow or green/vellow insulation used as earthing conductors.

Colour identification shall be of colour-fast, non-conductive material that is compatible with the cable and its location.

Single-core cables with other than green, yellow or green/yellow insulation, used as earthing conductors, shall be identified continuously along their entire length.

Colour identification shall not be used at terminations or along the entire length, to identify a green, yellow or green/yellow colour-insulated conductor as an active or neutral conductor.

2 Sleeving of existing earthing and bonding conductors

\* In electrical installations where earthing or bonding conductors have been previously installed using bare or green conductors, complying with previous editions of this Standard, such earthing or bonding conductors may remain.

\* When alterations or repairs are carried out that result in new terminations or

junctions to those existing bare or green conductors, such bare or green coloured conductors shall be sleeved with green/yellow sleeving within each of those new cable junctions or terminations.

Sleeving of existing live conductors

\* In electrical installations where conductors with yellow insulation have been

previously installed as live conductors, complying with previous editions of this Standard, such conductors with yellow insulation may remain.

\* When alterations or repairs are carried out that result in new terminations or

junctions to those existing live conductors with yellow insulation, such live conductors with yellow insulation shall be sleeved with white sleeving within each of those new cable junctions or terminations.

If the MEN link is insulated, the insulation shall be coloured \_\_\_\_\_\_ Green/yellow

Refer to definitions: **clause** - Protective earthing conductor:

1.4.100 Protective earthing conductor

An earthing conductor, other than a main earthing conductor,

intended to carry earth fault currents and connecting any portion of the earthing system to the portion of the electrical installation or electrical equipment required to be earthed, or to any other portion of the earthing system.

UEENEEG063A - P ile Edit View V	Protection.pdf - Adobe Window Help	Acrobat Reader DC		– © ×
Home Too	ls Document	🖹 🖶 🖂 🔾 🕜 🕹 109 / 18		
Ð	5	Section 4 - Earthing		Comment
9 ©	Ρ	ROTECTIVE EARTHING CONDUC	TORS "the earth in the twin & earth"	🔏 Fill & Sign
		Refer to definitions: clause	<ul> <li>Protective earthing conductor:</li> </ul>	
			a conductor used to connect any portion of the ne electrical installation required to be earthed.	
		From supply transformer		
4		6000 0000		•
		Protected link neutral link		1
			Figure 5	
		Refer to Section 5: clause	- Protective earthing conductor - General:	
		Any earthing system via a protective ea	shall be connected to the arthing conductor.	Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC Start Free Trial
w	📄 🛛 📴	o c L		へ 駅 小) ENG 1:14 PM 15/08/2018 ロ
efer to	o Sectio	on 5: clause - Protectiv	e earthing conductor - General:	

Any \_\_\_\_\_\_ shall be connected to the earthing system

via a protective earthing conductor

5.3 EARTHING SYSTEM PARTS

5.3.1 General

The protective earthing arrangement for an electrical installation providing protection by means of automatic disconnection of supply and connected to the MEN system of distribution shall include the following parts:

(a) Protective earthing conductors connecting exposed conductive parts as required.

(b) Main earthing conductor.

(c) Main earthing terminal, connection or bar.

(d) MEN connection between the main earthing terminal, connection or bar and the supply neutral bar.

(e) Earth electrode.

(f) Equipotential bonding of extraneous conductive and other parts as required.

Protective earthing conductors shall be connected to -

Main switchboard

any point on the \_\_\_\_\_

an earth terminal or bar at a \_\_\_\_\_

any point on a \_\_\_\_\_\_ earthing conductor

5.5.2 Protective earthing conductors

5.5.2.1 Arrangement

All protective earthing conductors shall be directly connected to the main earthing conductor or to another point on an earthing system that is connected to the main earthing conductor. Protective earthing conductors shall not normally carry load current.

The connection shall be made at one or a combination of the following points:

(a) An earthing terminal/connection or bar at the main switchboard provided specifically for the connection of earthing conductors and that is directly connected to the main earthing conductor.

(b) Any point on the main earthing conductor.

(c) An earthing terminal/connection or bar at a distribution board provided specifically for the connection of protective earthing conductors and arranged to comply with Clause 5.5.2.2.

(d) Any point on a protective earthing conductor providing facilities for earthing at a distribution board and arranged to comply with Clause 5.5.2.2.

5.4.3 Lighting points

- 5.4.4 Luminaires
- 5.4.2 Socket-outlets
- 5.4.5 Conductive supports for aerial conductors
- 5.4.6 Structural metalwork including conductive building materials
- 5.4.7 Submersible pumps
- 5.4.8 Variable frequency devices
- 5.5.1 Main earthing conductor

5.5.1.1 Arrangement

An earthing conductor, deemed to be the main earthing conductor, shall be taken from the main earthing terminal/connection or bar at the main switchboard to an earth electrode complying with Clause 5.3.6. The main earthing conductor shall be run in as direct a manner as possible

and shall not be directly connected to the terminal of any accessory, luminaire or appliance

Refer to AS/NZS 3000 Figure 5.3 for examples of earthing connections.

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Conductor material and type - General: When copper earthing conductors are used they shall be of high conductivity copper and can be in the form of -

conductors; or

conductors; or

	conductors having a CSA	of not less than	10mm <sub>2</sub> and a
thickness of not less than 1.5mn	n <sub>2</sub>		

## 5.3.2 Earthing conductor material and type

- 5.3.2.1 Conductor material
- 5.3.2.1.1 Copper conductors

Copper earthing conductors shall be of high conductivity copper and shall be in the form of-

(a) stranded conductors;

(b) circular braided conductors; or

(c) solid conductors having a cross-sectional area not less than  $10\ \text{mm}_2$  and a thickness not less than 1.5 mm.

Exceptions:

1 A smaller solid conductor may be used where permitted by a particular cable Standard.

2 This Clause need not apply where copper cable components, such as sheaths or screens, are deemed to be an earthing conductor in accordance with Clause 5, 3, 2, 2.

5.3.2.1.2 Aluminium conductors

Aluminium conductors may be used as earthing conductors, provided that they comply with the following conditions:

(a) Conductors of 10 mm<sub>2</sub> or less shall be solid conductors.

(b) Minimum 16  $\ensuremath{\text{mm}}_2$  conductors shall be used for main earthing conductors.

(c) Connection methods shall comply with Section 3 of this Standard.

(d) Installation methods shall prevent corrosion of the conductor and connections.

(e) Conductors shall not be installed underground or in damp situations. Exception: Aluminium earthing conductors may be installed underground or in damp situations where designed and suitable for such use.

### Refer to Section 5: clause - Size - General:

The cross-sectional area of a protective earthing conductor shall ensure adequate \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for prospective fault currents for a time at least equal to the operating time of the associated protective device

**NOTE:** Prospective fault current means the highest possible fault current that could flow at the point of a fault or the maximum fault current that would flow in the worse possible instance. ie: when the impedance at the fault is at its lowest possible value.

appropriate \_\_\_\_\_

□ adequate \_\_\_\_\_\_ strength and resistance to external influences

□ allowance for deterioration in \_\_\_\_\_\_ that may be reasonably be expected.

5.3.3 Earthing conductor size (cross-sectional area)

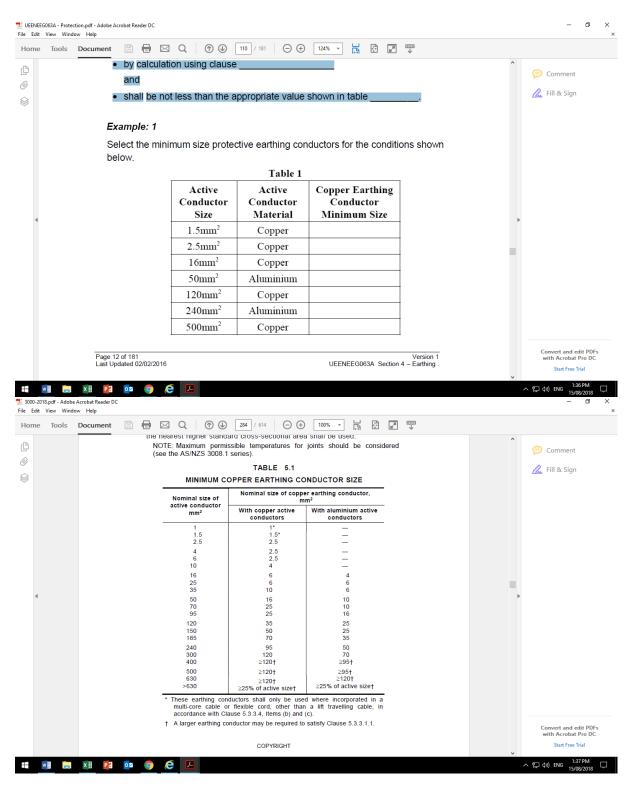
5.3.3.1 Protective earthing conductors

5.3.3.1.1 General

The cross-sectional area of a protective earthing conductor shall ensure-

(a) adequate current-carrying capacity for prospective fault currents for a time at least equal to the operating time of the associated overcurrent protective device; (b) appropriate earth fault-loop impedance (see Clause 5.7); (c) adequate mechanical strength and resistance to external influences; and (d) for parts of the protective earthing conductor that do not consist of cables, or parts of cables, that there is an allowance for the subsequent deterioration in conductivity that may reasonably be expected. Refer to Section 5: clause - Selection of CSA of protective earthing conductor: The CSA of protective earthing conductors shall be determined -□ by calculation using clause \_\_\_\_\_ and □ shall be not less than the appropriate value shown in table . 5.3.3.1.2 Selection The cross-sectional area of any copper protective earthing conductor required for the protection of any portion of an electrical installation shall he determined either-(a) from Table 5.1 in relation to the cross-sectional area of the largest active conductor supplying the portion of the electrical installation to be protected; or b) by calculation, in accordance with Clause 5, 3, 3, 1, 3, Exceptions: 1 The minimum size of a conductor required for the earthing of exposed conductive parts associated with unprotected consumer mains shall be in accordance with Clauses 5.3.3.2 and 5.5.3.5. 2 Aerial earthing conductors shall comply with Clause 5.3.3.3. 3 Earthing conductors in cables, flexible cables or flexible cords shall comply with Clause 5.3.3.4. NOTES: 1 The installation should be so prepared that electrical equipment terminals are capable of accepting the protective earthing conductors. 2 Calculation may be necessary if the choice of cross-sectional area of phase conductors has been determined by consideration of short-circuit current. Where the active conductor comprises a number of conductors, connected in parallel, the earthing conductor shall be determined in relation to the summation of the cross-sectional areas of the individual conductors forming the largest active conductor to be protected. Where the summation of cross-sectional areas does not correspond exactly with the nominal size of the active conductor given in Table 5.1, the conductor shall be determined in relation to the nearest larger size of active conductor. The minimum cross-sectional area of any conductive wiring enclosure, cable component, framework or catenary wire used as an earthing medium in accordance with Clause 5.3.2.2, shall be such that the impedance of the

medium is not greater than that determined for a copper earthing conductor in accordance with this Clause (Clause 5.3.3.1.2).



5.3.2.1 Conductor material

5.3.2.1.1 Copper conductors

Copper earthing conductors shall be of high conductivity copper and shall

be in the form of-(a) stranded conductors; (b) circular braided conductors; or (c) solid conductors having a cross-sectional area not less than 10 mm<sup>2</sup> and a thickness not less than 1.5 mm. Refer to Section 5: clause - Types - General: List 5 types of protective earthing conductor that may be used to earth exposed conductive parts earthing conductors that are earthing conductors in a \_\_\_\_\_ □earthing conductors in and similar wiring enclosures. 5.3.2.2 Conductor type Protective earthing conductors may include the following: (a) Earthing conductors that comply with Clause 5.3.2.1, separately Installed b) Earthing conductors that comply with Clause 5.3.2.1, in a common enclosure with live conductors. (c) Earthing conductors in multi-core cables. (d) Busbars. In addition, and subject to the special conditions of Clause 5.3.2.3, the following media may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor: (i) Conductive conduit, tube, pipe, trunking and similar wiring enclosures. (ii) Conductive sheaths, armours and screens of cables. (iii) Conductive framework used for mounting electrical equipment. (iv) Catenary wires for the support of cables. Sprinkler pipes or pipes conveying gas, water, flammable liquid or other conductive non-electrical service enclosures shall not be used as an earthing medium 5.3.2.3 Special conditions The following conditions apply where the components in Clause 5.3.2.2(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) are used for protective earthing: (a) Conductive conduit, tube, pipe, trunking and similar wiring enclosures May be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that-(i) the electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied by live conductors contained within the wiring enclosure; and (ii) for screwed conductive wiring enclosures, the wiring enclosure is directly connected by conductive threads or locknuts to the

electrical equipment to be earthed.

(b) Conductive sheaths, armours and screens of cables May be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that the electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied only by live conductors incorporated in the cable.

Can sprinkler pipes, gas pipes, water pipes or other metallic non-electrical service enclosures be used as earthing conductors?

### No

5.3.2.2 Conductor type

Sprinkler pipes or pipes conveying gas, water, flammable liquid or other conductive non-electrical service enclosures shall not be used as an earthing medium

ne Tools Doc	ument 🗄 🖶 🖂 Q, 🕜 🕹 111 /		
	Example: 2		Comment
	Complete table 2 by determining conjunction with each of the liste	the type of earthing method that may be used in ad installation methods.	🔏 Fill & Sign
		Table 2	
	Installation Method	Earthing Method	
	TPI cables in PVC trunking		
	TPI cables in steel conduit		
	TPS cables unenclosed		Þ
	MIMS cable		
	Aerial cable		
	TPS cable on catenary wire		
	Steel wire armoured cable		
	TPS cable on cable tray		
	- <u> </u>		Convert and edit PD with Acrobat Pro D Start Free Trial

5.3.2.3 Special conditions

The following conditions apply where the components in Clause 5.3.2.2(i),
(iii), (iii) or (iv) are used for protective earthing:
(a) Conductive conduit, tube, pipe, trunking and similar wiring enclosures May be regarded as a protective earthing conductor.

provided that-

(i) the electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied by live conductors contained within the wiring enclosure; and

(ii) for screwed conductive wiring enclosures, the wiring enclosure is

directly connected by conductive threads or locknuts to the electrical equipment to be earthed.

(b) Conductive sheaths, armours and screens of cables May be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that the

electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied only by live conductors incorporated in the cable. Exception: This condition does not preclude the use of a MIMS cable

sheath as a main earthing conductor, provided that any circuit protective earthing conductors connected to the sheath are associated only with the circuits supplied through the MIMS cable.

(c) Conductive framework:

(i) General Conductive framework may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that-

(A) the exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment are mounted on, and in effective electrical contact with, the framework; and

(B) the conductive framework is earthed by the connection of a protective earthing conductor directly to the framework.

(ii) Contact with hinged components Hinged components of conductive framework, such as cubicle doors, may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that-

(A) the fixed component of the framework is connected to a protective earthing conductor; and

(B) the fixed and hinged components of the framework are connected by means of a flexible protective earthing conductor.

(iii) Contact with moving components The interface between moving components may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that-

(A) the fixed component of the equipment is directly connected to a protective earthing conductor; and

(B) the fixed and movable components of the equipment are in effective contact by means of metal-to-metal bearing surfaces, such as the contact between a rail and wheel or between an axle and bearing.

Additional means of electrical continuity, such as sliding shoes or spring-loaded brushes, may be required where an accumulation of rust or non-conductive dust is likely to occur.

(d) Catenary wires A catenary wire may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that it-

(i) has not less than seven strands;

(ii) is supported by means of suitable anchorages;

(iii) has a nominal cross-sectional area of not less than 8.5 mm2 if constructed of hard-drawn copper or galvanized low carbon (mild) steel;

(iv) has a resistance in accordance with the requirements of Clause 5.3.3; and

(v) is identified as an earthing conductor, in accordance with Clause 3.8.3.4, and for aerial earthing conductors, at each

anchorage point or catenary support.

5.4 EARTHING OF EQUIPMENT

5.4.1 General

5.4.1.1 Exposed conductive parts

The exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment shall be earthed where the electrical equipment is-

(a) installed or could operate in an earthed situation; or
(b) not installed in an earthed situation but any exposed conductive part of the electrical equipment is electrically continuous with an extraneous conductive part that is located in an earthed situation. Exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment protected by electrical separation in accordance with Clause 7.4.3(c) shall not be earthed. Exposed conductive parts need not be earthed if supplied by a SELV or PELV system in accordance with Clause 7.5.

Exception: Electrical equipment need not be earthed where the wiring of the electrical equipment conforms to protection by the use of double insulation, where the following conditions apply:

(a) Electrical equipment complying with AS/NZS 3100 for double(b)

insulation need not be earthed.

Installation wiring entering equipment

Where cables connecting electrical equipment having double insulation enter the electrical equipment in such a manner that they may come into contact with accessible external conductive parts of the electrical equipment, the cables shall be of a type affording double insulation.

NOTE: Where double insulation is afforded by means of insulated and sheathed cables alone, care should be taken that screws or nails forming part of the structure or equipment are not liable to penetrate the cable, particularly where the cable is subject to movement during maintenance or

(a) other operations. See also Clauses 3.9.3 and 3.9.4.

Internal electrical equipment wiring

Conductors within electrical equipment having double insulation shall be protected, secured or insulated so that, if any one conductor becomes detached from its termination, neither the conductor nor its functional insulation can come into contact with accessible conductive parts.

The attachment of one conductor to another by tying, lacing, clipping or the like, in such a manner as to prevent either conductor coming into contact with accessible conductive parts if it becomes detached from its termination, shall be deemed to comply with this requirement. 5.4.1.2 Conductive building materials

Conductive building materials shall be earthed in accordance with Clause 5.4.6.

5.4.1.3 Connection of electrical equipment to earth

Equipment required to be earthed shall be arranged for connection to-(a) protective earthing conductors in the form of cables, cords, busbars or

(a) similar forms of current-carrying material; or (b) another earthing medium, such as conductive parts of cables, wiring enclosures, switchboard framework or the like, in accordance with Clause 5.3.2. Equipotential bonding shall be arranged in accordance with Clause 5.6. 5.4.2 Socket-outlets The earthing contact of every socket-outlet shall be earthed. Exceptions: 1 An earthing contact of a socket-outlet supplied as a separated circuit shall be bonded to the protective bonding system, in accordance with Clause 7.4. 2 In accordance with Clause 7.5.10, a socket-outlet supplied as an extra-low voltage circuit shall not be provided with an earthing contact. 5.4.3 Lighting points A protective earthing conductor, connected to a terminal or suitably insulated and enclosed, shall be provided at every lighting point, including (a) transformers supplying ELV lighting systems. 5.4.4 Luminaires (a) The exposed conductive parts of luminaires shall be earthed 5.4.5 Conductive supports for aerial conductors Conductive poles, posts, struts, brackets, stay wires and other conductive supports for low voltage aerial conductors shall be earthed. Exceptions 1 Conductive supports effectively and permanently separated from all conductors by double insulation need not be earthed. An acceptable method would include use of XLPE type X-90UV cable to AS/NZS 3560 with insulated strain clamps and double insulated connectors to AS/NZS 4396. 2 Conductive supports effectively and permanently separated from aerial conductors by insulators mounted on timber, or other insulating supports, need not be earthed where the space between the conductors and the conductive supports is not less than-· for single-core conductors, half the space between the conductors as specified in Clause 3.12.5.4; or · for multi-core conductors, 100 mm. 3 Conductive supports beyond arm's reach and effectively and permanently separated from any conductive guttering, roof or structural metalwork by a clearance or creepage distance of at least 25 mm need not be earthed. 4 Any stay wire that is attached to a conductive support fitted with a robust strain insulator so that any portion of the stay wire that is within arm's reach and that is readily accessible is isolated from the (a) remainder of the stay wire, need not be earthed. 5.4.6 Structural metalwork including conductive building materials

5.4.6.1 General

\* Structural metalwork forming the frame of a structure containing an electrical installation or part thereof, including sheds or similar structures that are permanently connected to the electrical installation wiring, shall be earthed. The size of the earthing conductor used for earthing the frames shall be determined from Clause 5.3.3 in relation to the cross-sectional area of the largest active conductor that is contained within the framework of that electrical installation. \* For combined outbuildings, each outbuilding shall contain its own individual (a) bonding connection to the conductive frames within that outbuilding All other conductive building materials shall be earthed where-(a) the risk of contact with live parts of electrical equipment or insulated. unsheathed cables exists; or (b) double insulation of cables in contact with conductive building materials is not permanently and effectively maintained. The breaking of a conductor at a termination shall not result in contact between unearthed conductive building material and-(i) live parts; or (ii) parts separated from live parts by single insulation. This requirement may be satisfied by-(A) restraining the conductor by tying, lacing or clipping; or (B) containing the termination within a non-conductive shroud or enclosure. 5.4.6.2 Connection to protective earthing conductors Earthing of parts of structural metalwork, including conductive building materials, may be effected by the connection of a protective earthing conductor of appropriate size at one point of the metalwork, provided that the resistance between the earth bar and any part required to be earthed does not exceed 0.5 · 5.4.7 Submersible pumps The exposed conductive parts of a submersible pump shall be earthed by means of a protective earthing conductor that is terminated at the pump (a) motor.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Special conditions:

List two requirements that apply when metallic conduit or trunking is used as a protective earthing conductor.

- □\_\_\_\_\_
- D\_\_\_\_\_

5.3.2.3 Special conditions

The following conditions apply where the components in Clause 5.3.2.2(i), (iii), (iii) or (iv) are used for protective earthing:

### 5.3.2.3 Special conditions

The following conditions apply where the components in Clause 5.3.2.2(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) are used for protective earthing: (a) Conductive conduit, tube, pipe, trunking and similar wiring enclosures May be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that-(i) the electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied by live conductors contained within the wiring enclosure; and (ii) for screwed conductive wiring enclosures, the wiring enclosure is directly connected by conductive threads or locknuts to the electrical equipment to be earthed.

Fixed and hinged components of metallic framework such as cubicle doors are deemed to be earthed provided that -

and

## 5.3.2.3 Special conditions

(ii) Contact with hinged components Hinged components of conductive framework, such as cubicle doors, may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that(A) the fixed component of the framework is connected to a protective earthing conductor; and
(B) the fixed and hinged components of the framework are connected by means of a flexible protective earthing conductor.

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Continuity - General: Protective earthing conductors shall be suitably protected against –

5.5.4 Continuity 5.5.4.1 General Earthing conductors shall be suitably protected against mechanical and chemical deterioration and electrodynamic forces. Star or cutting washers or similar devices that effectively cut through paint or similar coatings are considered to be an acceptable method of ensuring earth continuity across bolted or clamped joints between metal equipment panels or framework that have painted or coated surfaces.

Metallic wiring enclosures, metallic sheaths, armours and screens of cables that are required to be earthed or used as an earthing medium must be -

\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ continuous

5.5.4.3 Conductive sheaths, armours and screens of cables Conductive sheaths, armours and screens of cables and associated fittings that are required to be earthed, including those used as an earthing medium, shall be mechanically and electrically continuous. The impedance of such cable components and associated fittings providing earth continuity shall be in accordance with that required for a copper earthing conductor determined in accordance with Clause 5.3.3.

Refer to Section 8: clause - Continuity of earthing system:

The resistance of protective earthing conductors shall be low enough to permit the passage of current necessary to operate the circuit \_\_\_\_\_\_. breaker

5.4.6.2 Connection to protective earthing conductors

Earthing of parts of structural metalwork, including conductive building materials, may be effected by the connection of a protective earthing conductor of appropriate size at one point of the metalwork, provided that the resistance between the earth bar and any part required to be earthed does not exceed 0.5  $\cdot$ .

The maximum resistance of the protective earthing conductor associated with any particular circuit depends on -

□ \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the protective device

and the

□ \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the live conductors that comprise the circuit.

## Resistance/Resistance

#### FUNCTIONAL EARTH CONDUCTOR

Refer to definitions: clause - Functional earthing:

Functional earth conductors are used to ensure the correct operation of electrical equipment. Functional earth conductors are commonly found in -

equipment;
 equipment;

□ .

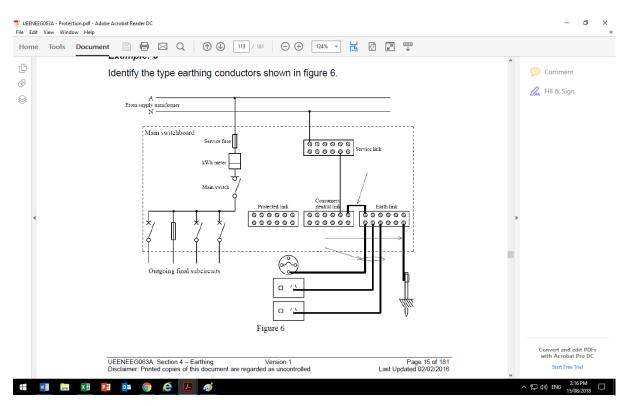
### 5.2.2 Functional earthing (FE)

Equipment may be required to be connected to the earthing system for purposes of correct operation rather than the safety conditions associated with protective earthing. In such cases, functional earthing conductors are not required to be selected and installed to withstand fault currents or to be identified in the same manner as a protective earthing conductor. Examples:

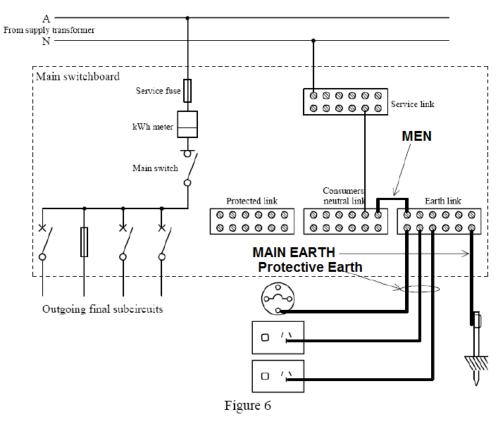
1 Functional earth (FE) connections fitted to certain types of RCDs to provide an earth for an alternative supply connection for the internal electronic circuit operation in the event of the incoming neutral connection becoming disconnected.

2 Conductors connecting cathodic protection systems or radio

#### interference suppression devices to a separate earthing arrangement.



Identify the type earthing conductors shown in figure 6.



**EARTHING OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT – PROTECTIVE EARTHING** 

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Earthing of equipment - General: Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Exposed conductive parts Except where exempted, exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment shall be earthed where the electrical equipment is a)\_\_\_\_\_\_b)\_\_\_\_\_\_

### 5.1.2 Selection and installation

Earthing arrangements shall be selected and installed to perform the following functions, or have the following features:

(a) Enable automatic disconnection of supply in the event of a short circuit to earth fault or excessive earth leakage current in the protected part of the installation through protective earthing arrangements.

(b) Enable equipment requiring an earth reference to function correctly through functional earth (FE) arrangements.

(c) Mitigate voltage differences appearing between exposed conductive parts of equipment and extraneous conductive parts through equipotential bonding arrangements.

(d) Provide an effective and reliable low impedance fault path capable of carrying earth fault and earth leakage currents without danger or failure from thermal, electromechanical, mechanical, environmental and other external influences.

(e) Provide measures for the connection of exposed conductive parts and extraneous conductive parts.

### 5.2.1 Protective earthing

When a fault occurs between a live part and an exposed conductive part or parts of the protective earthing system, a prospective touch voltage may arise between simultaneously accessible conductive parts. Fault protection by means of automatic disconnection of supply is intended to limit this voltage.

Automatic disconnection is achieved by-

(a) the provision of a protective earthing system in which exposed conductive parts are connected via conductors or similar medium to the earthed neutral of the distribution system; and

(b) in the event of a fault current or excessive earth leakage current flowing in the protective earthing system, overcurrent or earth leakage current protective devices operate to disconnect the affected part of the installation within the specified maximum duration of the prospective touch voltage.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Exposed conductive parts

Except where exempted, exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment shall be earthed where the electrical equipment is -

a)\_\_\_\_\_ b)\_\_\_\_\_ 5.4 EARTHING OF EQUIPMENT

5.4.1 General

5.4.1.1 Exposed conductive parts

The exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment shall be earthed where the electrical equipment is-

(a) installed or could operate in an earthed situation; or
(b) not installed in an earthed situation but any exposed conductive part of the electrical equipment is electrically continuous with an extraneous conductive part that is located in an earthed situation.
Exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment protected by electrical

(a) separation in accordance with Clause 7.4.3(c) shall not be earthed.

## 7.4.3 Arrangement of circuits

Separated circuits shall comply with the following requirements:

(a) Circuit voltage shall not exceed 500 V.

(b) All live parts of a separated circuit shall be reliably and effectively electrically separated from all other circuits, including other separated circuits and earth.

This requirement shall also apply to live parts of relays, contactors and similar electrical equipment installed in the separated circuit. NOTES:

1 This requirement can be satisfied by insulation of the live parts to Class II (double or reinforced insulation) or measures that are equivalent to the input and output transformer winding isolation provisions of AS/NZS 61558.

2 Each separated circuit should comprise a separate cable or wiring system. However, multi-core cables or a common non-conductive wiring enclosure may be used where the segregation requirements of Clause 3.9.8 are satisfied.

(c) Exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment supplied by a separated circuit shall not be connected to the protective earthing conductor, or the exposed conductive parts, of the source of supply.

# **Exceptions:**

Electrical equipment need not be earthed where it complies with any of the following provisions:

# 5.4.1 General

5.4.1.1 Exposed conductive parts

Exception: Electrical equipment need not be earthed where the wiring of the electrical equipment conforms to protection by the use of double insulation, where the following conditions apply:

(a) Electrical equipment complying with AS/NZS 3100 for double (b) insulation need not be earthed. Installation wiring entering equipment Where cables connecting electrical equipment having double insulation enter the electrical equipment in such a manner that they may come into contact with accessible external conductive parts of the electrical equipment, the cables shall be of a type affording double insulation. NOTE: Where double insulation is afforded by means of insulated and sheathed cables alone, care should be taken that screws or nails forming part of the structure or equipment are not liable to penetrate the cable. particularly where the cable is subject to movement during maintenance or other operations. See also Clauses 3.9.3 and 3.9.4. Internal electrical equipment wiring Conductors within electrical equipment having double insulation shall be protected, secured or insulated so that, if any one conductor becomes detached from its termination, neither the conductor nor its functional insulation can come into contact with accessible conductive parts. The attachment of one conductor to another by tying, lacing, clipping or the like, in such a manner as to prevent either conductor coming into contact with accessible conductive parts if it becomes detached from its termination, shall be deemed to comply with this requirement

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Particular electrical equipment - Wiring systems: The exposed conductive parts of wiring enclosures or conductive sheaths, armours or screens required to be earthed, shall be earthed at the -

5.3.2.3 Special conditions
c) Conductive framework:
(i) General Conductive framework may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that(A) the exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment are mounted on, and in effective electrical contact with, the framework; and

(B) the conductive framework is earthed by the connection of a

protective earthing conductor directly to the framework

A metallic screen or braid incorporated in a cable need not be earthed where -

□\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## 5.3.2.3 Special conditions

Additionally, metallic cable sheathing, armouring, screening or braiding need not be earthed if the requirements of **clause** \_\_\_\_\_\_ are met

5.3.2.3 Special conditions
5.3.2.3 Special conditions
The following conditions apply where the components in Clause 5.3.2.2(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) are used for protective earthing:
(a) Conductive conduit, tube, pipe, trunking and similar wiring enclosures May be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that
(i) the electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied by live conductors contained within the wiring enclosure; and
(ii) for screwed conductive wiring enclosures, the wiring enclosure is directly connected by conductive threads or locknuts to the electrical equipment to be earthed.

regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that the electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied only by live conductors incorporated in the cable.

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Earthing of equipment supplied by flexible cord or cable: The exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment supplied by flexible cords or cables shall be earthed by connection to a protective earthing conductor:

5.5.3.3 Electrical equipment supplied by flexible cord or flexible cable The exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment supplied by flexible cord or flexible cable shall be earthed by connection to a protective earthing conductor incorporated with the associated live conductors in the sheath, braid or enclosure of the supply cord or cable.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Socket-outlets:

The earthing contact of every socket-outlet shall be earthed except:

## 5.4.2 Socket-outlets

The earthing contact of every socket-outlet shall be earthed. Exceptions:

1 An earthing contact of a socket-outlet supplied as a separated circuit shall be bonded to the protective bonding system, in accordance with Clause 7.4.

2 In accordance with Clause 7.5.10, a socket-outlet supplied as an extra-low voltage circuit shall not be provided with an earthing contact.

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Lighting points: A protective earthing conductor, connected to a terminal or suitably insulated and enclosed, shall be provided -

5.4.3 Lighting points

A protective earthing conductor, connected to a terminal or suitably insulated and enclosed, shall be provided at every lighting point, including transformers supplying ELV lighting systems.

Protective earthing conductor shall not be provided for -

5.4.3 Lighting points

A protective earthing conductor, connected to a terminal or suitably insulated and enclosed, shall be provided at every lighting point, including transformers supplying ELV lighting systems. Exceptions: 1 A protective earthing conductor shall not be provided for luminaires located in Zone 0 of swimming and spa pools installed in accordance

with Clause 6.3.4.5 and Zone 0 of fountains and water features installed in accordance with Clause 6.4.4.5

List four types of lighting points that need not be earthed:

<u> </u>	 	 	 	
<u> </u>				

# 5.4.3 Lighting points

A protective earthing conductor need not be provided for the following lighting points:

· Festoon-type lampholders of the all-insulated type.

 $\cdot$  Lighting points where the luminaire is earthed by attachment to screwed conductive conduit or pipe in accordance with Clause 5.3.2.3.

 $\cdot$  Lighting points consisting of a luminaire installed outdoors on a non-conductive pole where the luminaire is not in an earthed situation.

• ELV lighting points.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Unprotected consumers mains:

**NOTE:** The definition of unprotected consumers' mains may vary between electricity distributors. Local service rules should be checked with the relevant distributor. Any metallic equipment associated with unprotected consumers mains shall be earthed by connection to the:

or			

Provide four examples of metallic equipment that may required to be earthed when associated with unprotected consumer's mains.

□\_\_\_\_\_\_ □\_\_\_\_\_ □\_\_\_\_\_

### 5.5.3.5 Unprotected consumer mains

 $\Box$ 

Exposed conductive parts associated with consumer mains not provided with short-circuit protection on the supply side shall be earthed by a conductor or by direct connection to an earth bar such that either has a current-carrying capacity not less than that of the main neutral conductor. Unprotected consumer mains are those that are not protected by a service protective device (SPD) as shown in Figure 2.1.

NOTE: Short-circuit of an unprotected active conductor to a switchboard surround, riser bracket, etc. will cause the earthing conductor to continuously carry the maximum fault current available through those consumer mains. Reduced sizes for protective earthing conductors in other situations are permitted because the fault current is of limited duration. This conductor shall be connected to-

(a) the main neutral conductor or bar [see Figure 5.6(A)]; or

(b) the main earthing terminal/connection or bar, in which case, in accordance with Clause 5.3.5.2, the cross-sectional area of the MEN connection shall be not less than that of the main neutral conductor

Where double insulation of the consumer mains conductors is maintained up to the supply terminal/s of the service protective device/s, and shortcircuit protection is provided by that device, this requirement need not apply [see Figure 5.6(C)]. NOTES: 1 A system that is deemed to provide double insulation for aerial conductors

would include use of XLPE type X-90UV cable to AS/NZS 3560 with insulated strain clamps and double insulated connectors to AS/NZS 4396. 2 Exposed conductive parts associated with consumer mains include-(a) switchboard cases, surrounds and enclosures;

- (b) wiring enclosures;
- (c) boxes and accessories; and
- (d) supports for aerial conductors.

3 A distributor's upstream service protective device may provide short-circuit protection of consumer mains.

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Conductive supports for aerial conductors:

Supports for low voltage aerial conductors such as metallic poles, posts, struts, brackets and stay wires shall be earthed when within \_\_\_\_\_\_

5.4.5 Conductive supports for aerial conductors Conductive poles, posts, struts, brackets, stay wires and other conductive supports for low voltage aerial conductors shall be earthed.

Exceptions:

1 Conductive supports effectively and permanently separated from all conductors by double insulation need not be earthed. An acceptable method would include use of XLPE type X-90UV cable to AS/NZS 3560 with insulated strain clamps and double insulated

connectors to AS/NZS 4396.

2 Conductive supports effectively and permanently separated from aerial conductors by insulators mounted on timber, or other insulating supports, need not be earthed where the space between the conductors and the conductive supports is not less than-

 $\cdot$  for single-core conductors, half the space between the conductors as specified in Clause 3.12.5.4; or

· for multi-core conductors, 100 mm.

3 Conductive supports beyond arm's reach and effectively and permanently separated from any conductive guttering, roof or structural metalwork by a clearance or creepage distance of at least 25 mm need not be earthed.

4 Any stay wire that is attached to a conductive support fitted with a robust strain insulator so that any portion of the stay wire that is within arm's reach and that is readily accessible is isolated from the remainder of the stay wire, need not be earthed.

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Structural metalwork including conductive building materials:

Parts of structural metalwork, including conductive building materials, shall be earthed where -

 $\Box$ 

5.4.6 Structural metalwork including conductive building materials 5.4.6.1 General

\* Structural metalwork forming the frame of a structure containing an

electrical installation or part thereof, including sheds or similar structures that are permanently connected to the electrical installation wiring, shall be earthed. The size of the earthing conductor used for earthing the frames shall be determined from Clause 5.3.3 in relation to the cross-sectional area of the largest active conductor that is contained within the framework of that electrical installation. \* For combined outbuildings. each outbuilding shall contain its own individual bonding connection to the conductive frames within that outbuilding. All other conductive building materials shall be earthed where-(a) the risk of contact with live parts of electrical equipment or insulated. unsheathed cables exists; or (b) double insulation of cables in contact with conductive building materials is not permanently and effectively maintained. The breaking of a conductor at a termination shall not result in contact between unearthed conductive building material and-(i) live parts; or (ii) parts separated from live parts by single insulation. This requirement may be satisfied by-(A) restraining the conductor by tying, lacing or clipping; or (B) containing the termination within a non-conductive shroud or enclosure. 5.4.6.2 Connection to protective earthing conductors Earthing of parts of structural metalwork, including conductive building materials, may be effected by the connection of a protective earthing conductor of appropriate size at one point of the metalwork, provided that the resistance between the earth bar and any part required to be earthed does not exceed 0.5 · .

The breaking of a conductor at a termination shall not result in contact between unearthed conductive building material and -

(i) live parts; or
(ii) parts separated from live parts by single insulation

Refer to Section 5: **clause** –Domestic electrical installations

1.4.53 Electrical installation, domestic

An electrical installation in a private dwelling or that portion of an electrical installation associated solely with a flat or living unit. **Clause 5.4.6.3** - *Connection to protective earthing conductors,* further states that the earthing of structural metalwork and building materials may be affected by the connection of a protective earthing conductor (of appropriate size) at one point of the metalwork provided that the:

Earthing of parts of structural metalwork, including conductive building materials, may be effected by the connection of a protective earthing conductor of appropriate size at one point of the metalwork, provided that the resistance between the earth bar and any part required to be earthed does not exceed 0.5 ohm

### BONDING

Refer to definitions: clause - Equipotential bonding:

Equipotential bonding conductors are used to minimise the risk of potential differences occurring between exposed conductive parts and extraneous conductive parts of an installation. Equipotential bonding conductors are not intended to carry current in

5.6.1 General

Equipotential bonding is intended to minimize the risks associated with the occurrence of voltage differences between exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment and extraneous conductive parts.

### Refer to Section 5: clause - Arrangement:

Bonding shall be arranged by the connection of the extraneous conductive parts to the earthing system of the installation by equipotential bonding conductors in accordance with clauses

### 5.6.2 Arrangement

5.6.2.1 General

Equipotential bonding arrangements shall be provided in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.2 to 5.6.2.6 to avoid any potential differences that may occur between electrical equipment connected to the electrical installation earthing system and any conductive piping (including taps etc.) that may independently be in contact with the mass of earth (see Figures 5.7 and 5.8 for arrangement details).

Additional equipotential bonding requirements apply for:

(a) Patient areas of hospitals, medical and dental practices and dialyzing locations, in accordance with AS/NZS 3003.

- (b) Explosive atmospheres, in accordance with Clause 7.7.
- (c) Telecommunications installations, in accordance with AS/NZS 3015.
- (d) Film, video and television sites, in accordance with AS/NZS 4249.
- (e) Photovoltaic arrays, in accordance with AS/NZS 5033.
- \* (f) Grid connected inverters, in accordance with AS/NZS 4777.1.
- (g) Generating systems, in accordance with Clause 7.3.
- (h) Separated circuits, in accordance with Clause 7.4.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Insulation and identification:

Equipotential bonding conductors shall be coloured \_\_\_\_\_

ne Tools	Document	□ Q ① ① 172 / 614		
			use of these colours is restricted for NZ	Comment
		Exception: The colour identification p to the special applications listed in Cl	provisions of Table 3.4 need not apply ause 3.8.3.	🔏 Fill & Sign
	*	In New Zealand, there is no restriction NOTES:	n on sheathing colour.	
		subject to particular equipment star		
		2 Switchboard wiring is not rega AS/NZS 3439 series and AS/NZ combination to the identification of	arded as installation wiring but the S 61439 series restrict the green/yellow earthing conductors.	
		ТАВІ	LE 3.4	
		CONDUCTOR COLOURS F	FOR INSTALLATION WIRING	
		Function	Insulation colour	
		Protective earth	Green/yellow	
4		Equipotential bonding	Green/yellow	Þ
		Neutral	Black or light blue	
		Active	Any colour other than green, yellow, green/yellow, black or light blue	
		and not more than 70% of the	e colour shall cover not less than 30% e surface area, with the other colour	
		covering the remainder of the su 2 Recommended colours for active		
		(a) Red or brown for single-ph		
		(b) Red, white or blue for mult		
		3 Where colours are used for	the identification of cable cores, d cable identification colours and	
		European cable identification the same wiring enclosure or the		
		European cable identification the same wiring enclosure or the		Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC
	*	European cable identification the same wiring enclosure or the	e same multi-core cable.	

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Conductive water piping: Under what two conditions shall metallic water piping be equipotentially bonded?

### 5.6.2.2 Conductive water piping

Conductive water piping that is both-

(a) installed and accessible within the building containing the electrical installation; and

(b) continuously conductive from inside the building to a point of contact with the ground,

shall be bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation. Any equipotential bonding of conductive water piping shall be effected by means of an equipotential bonding conductor connected to the main earthing conductor or earth terminal or bar.

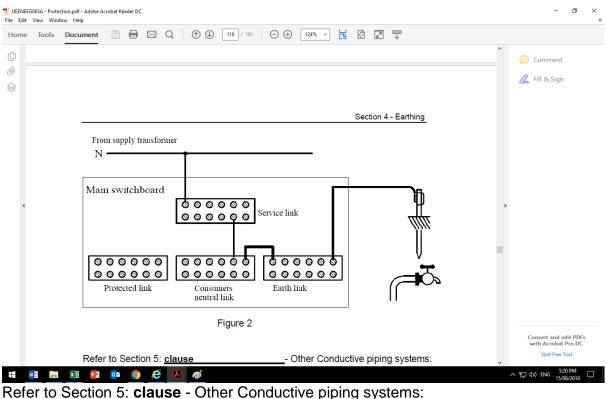
The connection of the bonding conductor to the conductive water piping shall be as close as practicable to the entry of the conductive water piping to the building.

When conductive water piping is bonded -

Where is the connection of the bond to be made?

## 5.6.2.2 Conductive water piping

shall be bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation. Any equipotential bonding of conductive water piping shall be effected by means of an equipotential bonding conductor connected to the main earthing conductor or earth terminal or bar. The connection of the bonding conductor to the conductive water piping shall be as close as practicable to the entry of the conductive water piping to the building.



Provide four examples of metallic piping that must be bonded if in contact with the exposed metallic parts of wiring enclosures or electrical equipment.

#### 

5.6.2.3 Other conductive piping systems

Conductive piping systems associated with fire sprinklers, gas, water or flammable liquid that are unavoidably in contact with the exposed conductive parts of wiring enclosures, cable components or other electrical equipment shall be connected to such equipment by means of an equipotential bonding conductor.

Exception: Bonding need not be provided where the piping system is effectively earthed by connection to an associated item of electrical equipment, e.g. pipes connected to electric hot water systems.

5.6.2.4 Conductive cable sheaths and conductive wiring enclosures The conductive sheath, armour or conductive wiring enclosure of conductors operating at above extra-low voltage shall comply with one of the following:

(a) The conductive sheath, armour or conductive wiring enclosure of conductors shall be bonded to any conductive pipes containing flammable agents, such as gas or oil, with which they are in contact. The bonding shall be arranged to prevent appreciable voltage differences at points of contact. Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Conductive cable sheaths and conductive wiring enclosures:

Where metal sheaths, armours or wiring enclosures are in contact with pipes containing

\_\_\_\_\_they shall be bonded to prevent voltage

differences at points of contact.

5.6.2.4 Conductive cable sheaths and conductive wiring enclosures The conductive sheath, armour or conductive wiring enclosure of conductors operating at above extra-low voltage shall comply with one of the following:

(a) The conductive sheath, armour or conductive wiring enclosure of conductors shall be bonded to any conductive pipes containing flammable agents, such as gas or oil, with which they are in contact. The bonding shall be arranged to prevent appreciable voltage differences at points of contact.

Refer to Section 5: clause - Showers and Bathrooms:

Any \_\_\_\_\_\_ within a concrete floor or wall forming part of a shower or bathroom shall be bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation. 5. 6. 2. 5 Showers and bathrooms

Any conductive reinforcing within a concrete floor or wall of a room containing a shower or bath shall be bonded to the earthing system of the electrical installation.

An equipotential bonding conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.6.3, shall be connected between the reinforcing material and any part of the earthing system.

\* For a combined outbuilding, each structure within that outbuilding that contains a shower or bathroom shall contain its own individual bonding connection to the conductive reinforcing within that structure.

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Swimming and spa pools:

List the items to be equipotentially bonded around swimming and spa pools.  $\hfill\square$ 

5.6.2.6 Swimming and spa pools

\* 5.6.2.6.1 Bonding arrangement

An equipotential bonding conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.6.3, shall be connected between-

(a) the conductive pool structure and the pool equipotential bonding conductor connection point specified in Clauses 5.6.2.6.2 and 5.6.2.6.3;

(b) the items of electrical equipment specified in Clause 5.6.2.6.4;

(c) the conductive fixtures and fittings specified in Clause 5.6.2.6.5; and

(d) the earthing conductors associated with each circuit supplying the pool or spa, or the earthing bar at the switchboard at which the circuits originate. The resistance of an equipotential bonding conductor connected between the items listed (a) to (d) shall not exceed 0.5 ohm 5.6.2.6.4 Electrical equipment 5.6.2.6.5 Conductive fixtures and fittings

Refer to Section 5: **clause** - Telephone and telecommunications earthing systems: 5. 6. 2. 7 Telephone and telecommunication earthing systems Telecommunications earthing systems may be connected in common with the electrical installation earthing system in order to:

The telephone and telecommunication earthing system may be connected in common with the electrical installation earthing system in order to minimize the risk associated with different voltages appearing on the two systems.

If the telecommunications earthing system is bonded to the installation earthing system it shall be connected:

If the telephone and telecommunication earthing system is directly connected to the electrical installation earthing system, it shall be connected either-

(a) to the electrical installation earthing system at an enclosed terminal provided for the purpose; or

(b) directly to the earth electrode by an independent connecting device, and shall be clearly identified

If an enclosed terminal is used the following conditions shall apply: (i) The terminal shall be connected by means of a protective earthing conductor to the main earthing conductor of the electrical installation earthing system in accordance with the connection methods specified in Clause 5.5.2.

(ii) The terminal shall not be installed within a switchboard.

(iii) The terminal shall be installed in a convenient and readily accessible position.

(iv) The minimum cross-sectional area of the protective earthing conductor used for the connection shall be  $6 \text{ mm}_2$ .

ne Tools	Document $\square$ $\square$ $\square$ $\bigcirc$	
	•	Comment
		💪 Fill & Sign
	Refer to Section 5: <u>clause</u> - Size (minimum cross-sectional area):	
	Provide the minimum size (CSA) of equipotential bonding conductors for the following situations:	
	Metallic water piping: mm²	
	Metallic fire sprinkler, gas or flammable liquid pipes:	
4	Metallic cable sheaths and wiring enclosures in contact with pipes containing flammable liquids or gases:	Þ
	Metallic parts of swimming and spa pools:	
	Telecommunications earthing systems:	
	Metallic enclosures and supports associated with unprotected consumers mains:	
	MEN SYSTEM – TYPICAL ARRANGEMENT OF CONDUCTORS	
	Refer to clause Earthing in outbuildings:	Convert and edit PDF with Acrobat Pro DC

The equipotential bonding conductor need not be larger than the sizes specified below, provided the installation conditions are such that mechanical damage is unlikely to occur, and, in accordance with Clause 5.7.5, a larger size is not required to reduce the earth fault-loop impedance.

The size of equipotential bonding conductors shall be in accordance with the following:

(a) Conductive piping, cable sheaths and wiring enclosures The equipotential bonding conductor required in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.2 to 5.6.2.4 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4 mm<sub>2</sub>.

(b) Showers, bathrooms, swimming and spa pools The equipotential bonding conductors required to connect conductive parts of a shower, bathroom, swimming or spa pool in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.5 and 5.6.2.6 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4 mm<sub>2</sub>. Exception: The cross-sectional area of the equipotential bonding conductor for a swimming or spa pool may be determined as for an earthing conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.3.3.4(c), where the equipotential bonding conductor is incorporated in a multi-core flexible cord supplying electrical equipment that is required to be removed for maintenance.

(c) Telephone and telecommunication earthing systems The equipotential bonding conductors required to connect a telephone and telecommunication earthing system in accordance with Clause 5.6.2.7 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>. NOTE: Refer to the AS/NZS 60079 series for minimum sizes of equipotential bonding conductors in explosive atmospheres.

### **MEN SYSTEM – TYPICAL ARRANGEMENT OF CONDUCTORS**

Refer to clause - Earthing in outbuildings:

5.5.3 Particular methods of earthing

5.5.3.1 Outbuildings

All parts of an electrical installation in or on an outbuilding that are required

to be earthed in accordance with Clause 5.4 shall be earthed by one of the following methods:

\* (a) Individual outbuildings The earthing system in an individual outbuilding shall be either-

(i) connected to a protective earthing conductor connected in accordance with Clause 5.5.2.1; or

(ii) connected as a separate MEN installation in accordance with Clauses 5.5.3.1(c) and 5.5.3.2.

\* (b) Combined outbuildings The earthing system in a combined outbuilding shall be connected to a protective earthing conductor, connected in accordance with Clause 5.5.2.1, and shall not be connected as a separate MEN installation.

(c) Separate MEN installation The earthing system in a separate MEN installation shall be connected to the submain neutral conductor supplying the outbuilding. In this case, the submain neutral conductor supplying the outbuilding is a combined protective earthing and neutral (PEN) conductor.

The electrical installation in the outbuilding shall be regarded as a separate electrical installation, and shall be earthed in accordance with other relevant Clauses of this Standard. The following requirements and recommendations also apply:

(i) There shall be not more than one MEN connection in any one individual outbuilding.

(ii) The distribution board in the outbuilding shall be regarded as a main switchboard for the purpose of effecting the MEN connection.

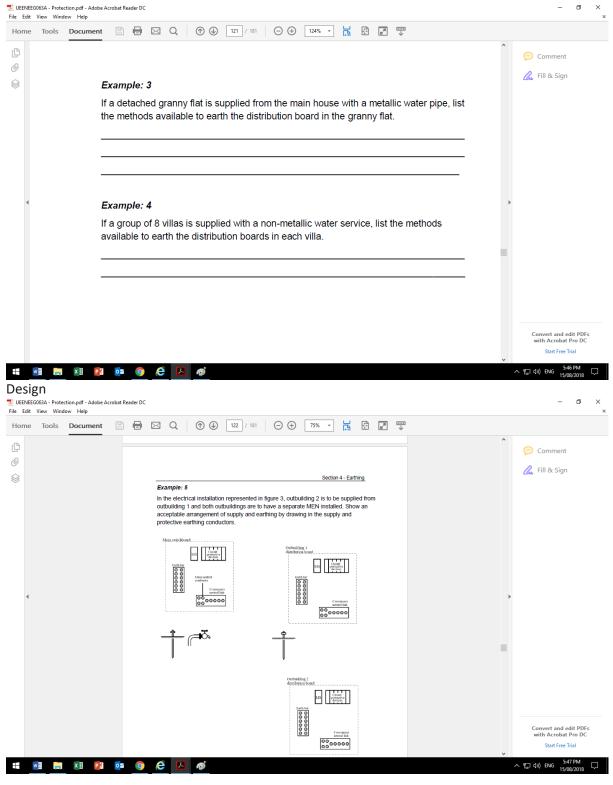
(iii) The earthing conductor between the distribution board in the outbuilding and the earth electrode shall be regarded as a main earthing conductor for the purposes of earthing of the electrical installation in the outbuilding.

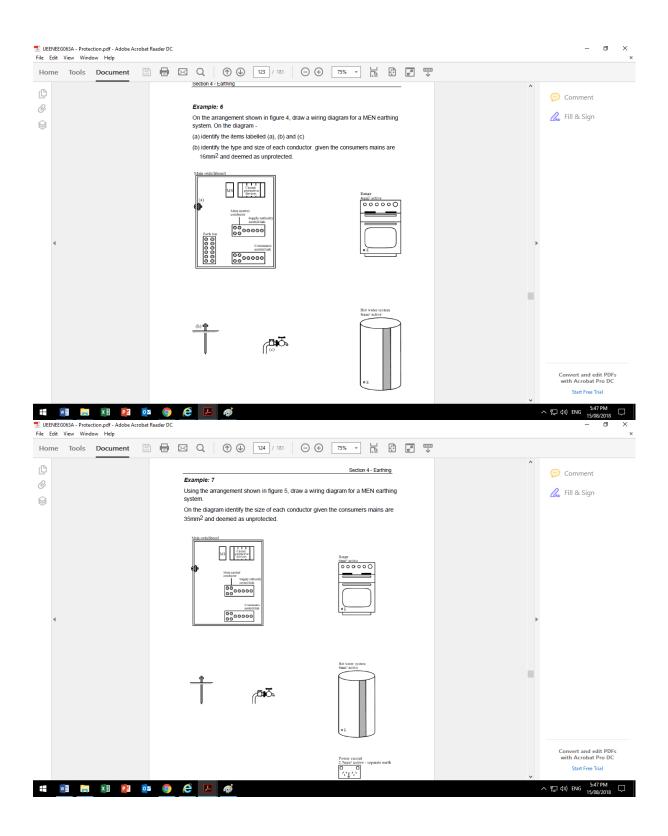
(iv) The submain supplying the outbuilding shall be run either-(A) directly from the main switchboard; or

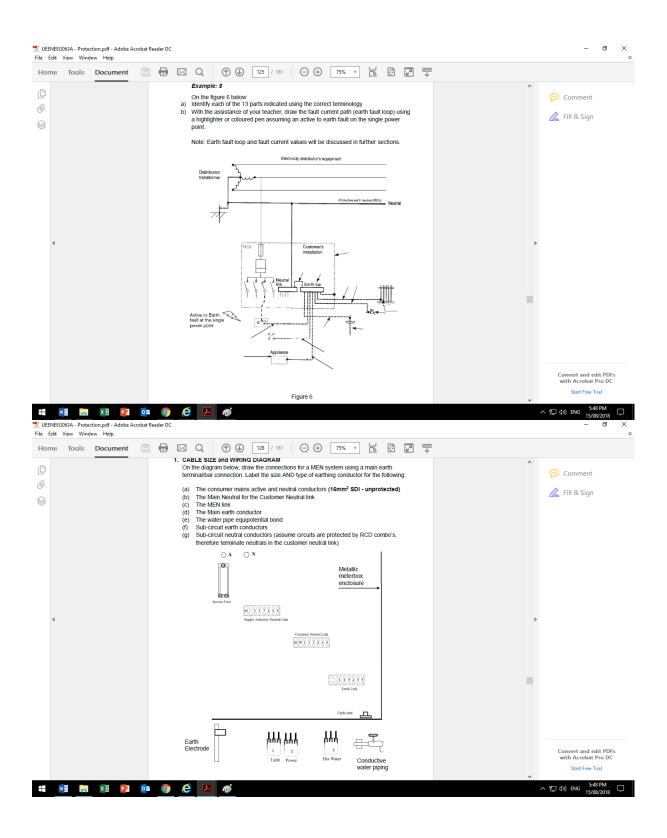
(B) from the main switchboard via distribution boards in one or more other outbuildings, to one distribution board only in the outbuilding.

(v) Where the combined protective earthing and neutral (PEN) conductor supplying the distribution board in the outbuilding runs from the main switchboard via distribution boards in one or more other outbuildings, the terminals on such distribution boards shall not be depended on for continuity of the combined protective earthing and neutral (PEN) conductor.

(vi) The combined protective earthing and neutral (PEN) conductor supplying the distribution board in the outbuilding should not be connected in parallel, by means of earthing or equipotential bonding conductors, with conductive pipes or structural metal within the electrical installation.







🗾 UEENEEG063A - Pro File Edit View W		robat Reader DC		- 0 ×
	Document	8 8	☑ Q ( ) ( ) [129 / 181 ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) (	
ß			MEN SYSTEM INSTALLATION     (a) Connect a mm <sup>2</sup> green yellow protective earth conductor betw metal box and one end of the earth link. Use a lug at the box end.	veen the Comment
0			(b) Install amm <sup>2</sup> main earth and amm <sup>2</sup> water pipe bond connect to the earth electrode and water pipe.	and 🖉 Fill & Sign
*			(c) Install final subcircuit tails and connect the neutrals to the neutral link the active conductors the same length as the corresponding neutral o but leave them un-terminated to one side)	. (Leave conductors
			(d) Connect subcircuit earth tails of mm <sup>2</sup> , mm <sup>2</sup> & mr main earth link.	n² to the
			(e) State the method as set out in AS/NZS 3000 for the testing of circuit not protected by an RCD. (Check section 8 – testing)	a final sub-
			40 B/ZC 2000 seference:	
٩			(f) With guidance from your teacher, label the appropriate parts of the su	witchboard ►
			as required for a MEN system. Note: Use masking tape on your switchboard. DO NOT label the pan	hel directly
			(g) Have the teacher inspect the work	
			3. MEN SYSTEM AND LOOP IMPEDANCE TESTING	
			MEN SYSTEM TEST RESULTS RESULT / COMMENT	
			Connection integrity of lugs, clips, bars etc.	_
			Continuity of earth conductors Resistance measurement of main earth and	_
			bond Loop impedance of the Hot Water circuit	Convert and edit PDFs
			Labelling of necessary parts	with Acrobat Pro DC Start Free Trial
	x∃ P⊇	<b>o</b> z ()	é 🗵 øj	~ 豆 di) ENG 5:49 PM トロロ 5:49 PM 15/08/2018 ロ
File Edit View W	ndow Help Document	8 8	Q ⊕ ⊕ 123 / 181 ⊖ ⊕ 75% ▼ □     □	
C			(f) With guidance from your teacher, label the appropriate parts of the su as required for a MEN system.	witchboard   Comment
0			Note: Use masking tape on your switchboard. DO NOT label the pan	nel directly
			(g) Have the teacher inspect the work.	🛴 Fill & Sign
			3. MEN SYSTEM AND LOOP IMPEDANCE TESTING	
			MEN SYSTEM TEST RESULTS RESULT / COMMENT	
			Connection integrity of lugs, clips, bars etc.	_
			Continuity of earth conductors Resistance measurement of main earth and	_
			bond Loop impedance of the Hot Water circuit	_
			Labelling of necessary parts	-
4			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
			UEENEE0033A Section 4 - Earthing Version 1 Page Disclaimer: Printed copies of this document are regarded as uncontrolled. Last Updated 02	31 of 181 00222016
			Practical 1 - Basic Relay Circu	<u>ats</u>
			O INSTALLATION OF CAR	BLES Convert and edit PDFs with Acrobat Pro DC
			ROOF     ROOF	the Start Free Trial
	x 🗄 🛛 P 🗃	<b>0</b> 2 <b>(</b>	6 🗵 🚿	へ 厚 di) ENG 5:49 PM 15/08/2018 ロ

e Tools	Document	B 🖶 🖻	Q († J 129 / 181			
			as required for a MEN system.	CE TESTING RESULT / COMMENT	^	Comment Kign
			Resistance measurement of main earth an bond Loop impedance of the Hot Water circuit Labelling of necessary parts	1 Page 31 of 151		•
		-		Practical 1 - Basic Relay Circuits		
			0	ROOF SWICHOUSE AND A STATEMENT OF CABLES	,	Convert and edit Pl with Acrobat Pro E Start Free Trial

## Page 133

A situation where there is a chance of a person touching an exposed conductive part and at the same time coming in contact with earth is referred to as an \_\_\_\_\_\_ situation.

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_

1.4.48 Earthed situation

A situation wherein there is a reasonable chance of a person touching exposed conductive parts and, at the same time, coming into contact with earth or with any conducting medium that may be in electrical contact with the earth or through which a circuit may be completed to earth. The following situations are deemed to be earthed situations:

Copper earthing conductors of 1mm<sub>2</sub> and 1.5mm<sub>2</sub> shall only be used in what form?\_\_\_\_\_

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_

5.3.2 Earthing conductor material and type

5.3.2.1 Conductor material

5.3.2.1.1 Copper conductors

Copper earthing conductors shall be of high conductivity copper and shall be in the form of-

- (a) stranded conductors;
- (b) circular braided conductors; or
- (c) solid conductors having a cross-sectional area not less than 10 mm<sup>2</sup> and a thickness not less than 1.5 mm. Exceptions:
- 1 A smaller solid conductor may be used where permitted by a particular

### cable Standard.

2 This Clause need not apply where copper cable components, such as sheaths or screens, are deemed to be an earthing conductor in accordance with Clause 5.3.2.2.

Why is it necessary to maintain a separation of at least 0.5 metres between an earth electrode and buried metallic services?

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_

5.3.6.4 Location

Earth electrodes shall be installed in a location that satisfies the following conditions:

(a) The electrode maintains effective contact with moist soil that is not subject to excessive drying out.

NOTE: This condition is deemed to be satisfied by locating the electrode-

(a) external to the building in ground that is exposed to the weather; or

(b) in other locations where the ground remains moist because of soil conditions or covers that reduce loss of moisture.

(b) The electrode is separated from conductive enclosures of other buried services, such as water, gas, telecommunications and flammable liquid, in order to reduce possible electrolytic action affecting the electrode or the other service.

Where consumers mains are not protected on the supply side by short circuit protective devices, the MEN link shall have a CSA of \_\_\_\_\_\_

AS/NZS Clause no.

5.5.3.5 Unprotected consumer mains

Exposed conductive parts associated with consumer mains not provided with short-circuit protection on the supply side shall be earthed by a conductor or by direct connection to an earth bar such that either has a current-carrying capacity not less than that of the main neutral conductor This conductor shall be connected to-

(a) the main neutral conductor or bar [see Figure 5.6(A)]; or

(b) the main earthing terminal/connection or bar, in which case, in accordance with Clause 5.3.5.2, the cross-sectional area of the MEN connection shall be not less than that of the main neutral conductor [see Figure 5.6(B)].

The resistance of the main earthing conductor shall not exceed?

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_

5.5.1.4 Resistance

The resistance of the main earthing conductor, measured between the main earthing terminal/connection or bar and the earth electrode, including the connection to the earth electrode, shall be not more than 0.5 Ohm

At what point should steel conduit be earthed when enclosing a single insulated circuit?

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_ 5.3.2.3 Special conditions The following conditions apply where the components in Clause 5.3.2.2(i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) are used for protective earthing: (a) Conductive conduit, tube, pipe, trunking and similar wiring enclosures May be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that-(i) the electrical equipment to be earthed is supplied by live conductors contained within the wiring enclosure; and (ii) for screwed conductive wiring enclosures, the wiring enclosure is directly connected by conductive threads or locknuts to the electrical equipment to be earthed. A metal control panel (electrical equipment) is located outside an earthed situation but is supplied with a metallic conduit which passes through an earthed situation. Is it necessary to earth the control box? AS/NZS Clause no. Yes

5.3.2.3 Special conditions

(c) Conductive framework:

(i) General Conductive framework may be regarded as a protective earthing conductor, provided that-

(A) the exposed conductive parts of electrical equipment are mounted on, and in effective electrical contact with, the framework; and

(B) the conductive framework is earthed by the connection of a protective earthing conductor directly to the framework.

Which of the following metallic parts shall not be used as a protective earthing conductor?

a)Metallic sheaths, armours and screening

b)Metallic conduits, tubes or trunking

c)Sprinkler pipes or pipes conveying gas or water

d)Metallic framework for mounting electrical equipment

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_

5.3.2.2 Conductor type

Sprinkler pipes or pipes conveying gas, water, flammable liquid or other conductive non-electrical service enclosures shall not be used as an earthing medium.

Is it necessary to mark the terminals for the connection of the MEN connection and the main neutral conductor on the main neutral link? AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_

5.3.5.3 Identification

Where the MEN connection is insulated, the insulation shall be coloured green or in a combination of green and yellow, in accordance with Clause 3.8.

What identification is required at the connection between the main earth and the earth stake?

AS/NZS Clause no. 5.5.1.2 Connection to earth electrode The connection of the main earthing conductor to the earth electrode shall-(a) be accessible for visual inspection and for the purposes of testing; NOTES: 1 Where necessary, access by means of an underground pit with its cover accessible above ground is considered acceptable, provided adequate space is available for the connection of test leads and the pit is suitably identified as to its purpose. 2 Where the reinforcing steel is used as the earth electrode, this testing condition is deemed to be satisfied by the provision of a test point on the main earthing electrode. (b) be made by means of a suitable device, in accordance with the manufacturer's specification, that provides adequate electrical conductivity; (c) provide protection against mechanical damage likely to occur to the main earthing conductor or the connection to the electrode at the location, in accordance with Clause 5.5.5.2; and (d) be suitably protected against corrosion in accordance with Clause 5, 5, 5, 3, 5.5.1.3 Labelling The main earthing conductor shall have a permanent label attached at the connection to the earth electrode with a legible warning against disconnection in the following form: WARNING: MAIN ELECTRICAL EARTHING CONDUCTOR-DO NOT DISCONNECT. What is the minimum CSA of any equipotential bonding conductor that may be required in an installation? \_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_ 5.6.3.2 Size The size of equipotential bonding conductors shall be determined from the requirements of this Clause 5.6.3, as appropriate to the particular bonding conductor application. The size of equipotential bonding conductors shall be in accordance with the following: (a) Conductive piping, cable sheaths and wiring enclosures The

equipotential bonding conductor required in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.2 to 5.6.2.4 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4  $mm_2$ .

(b) Showers, bathrooms, swimming and spa pools The equipotential bonding conductors required to connect conductive parts of a shower, bathroom, swimming or spa pool in accordance with Clauses 5.6.2.5 and 5.6.2.6 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 4 mm<sub>2</sub>. Exception: The cross-sectional area of the equipotential bonding conductor for a swimming or spa pool may be determined as for an earthing conductor, in accordance with Clause 5.3.3.4(c), where the equipotential bonding conductor is incorporated in a multi-core flexible cord supplying electrical equipment that is required to be removed for maintenance.

(c) Telephone and telecommunication earthing systems The equipotential bonding conductors required to connect a telephone and telecommunication earthing system in accordance with Clause 5.6.2.7 shall have a cross-sectional area not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>. NOTE: Refer to the AS/NZS 60079 series for minimum sizes of equipotential bonding conductors in explosive atmospheres.

In general, is a protective earth cable required to be installed at a batten holder or light point if the light point is non conductive?

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_

No

5.4.3 Lighting points

A protective earthing conductor, connected to a terminal or suitably insulated and enclosed, shall be provided at every lighting point, including transformers supplying ELV lighting systems.

Exceptions:

1 A protective earthing conductor shall not be provided for luminaires located in Zone 0 of swimming and spa pools installed in accordance with Clause 6.3.4.5 and Zone 0 of fountains and water features installed in accordance with Clause 6.4.4.5.

2 A protective earthing conductor need not be provided for the following lighting points:

• Festoon-type lampholders of the all-insulated type.

· Lighting points where the luminaire is earthed by attachment to screwed conductive conduit or pipe in accordance with Clause 5.3.2.3.

· Lighting points consisting of a luminaire installed outdoors on a non-conductive pole where the luminaire is not in an earthed situation.

• ELV lighting points.

#### Page 135

All conductors and items of electrical equipment have certain limiting factors, one of these factors is the maximum safe working current or as it is commonly called the –

## Operation current

the specified current limits are exceeded and there is no protection, or if the protection is either inadequate or ineffective, the resulting abnormal conditions could produce k)\_\_\_\_\_\_ of conductors; and

I)subsequent insulation \_\_\_\_\_.

## Heating/ break down

To ensure that wiring operates within its current-carrying capacity, devices are employed for the protection of a circuit against current overcurrent. The most commonly used overcurrent protective devices are the -

m)\_\_\_\_\_; and

n)\_\_\_\_\_.

### Fuse/ Circuit breaker

If the overload is large, as would occur with a short circuit, the protection must be capable of interrupting the fault current before it can rise to a dangerous value. The protection must also be able to disconnect the supply to the fault without damage to itself. To achieve this, the protection must have adequate \_\_\_\_\_ capacity. Known as -

o)\_\_\_\_\_ capacity for circuit breakers

and p) capacity for fuses.

This value is in kA. The making **capacity** is expressed as a peak value as the dc offset during fault conditions is taken into account. **Breaking capacity** of the **circuit breaker** refers to the maximum current in rms value the **circuit breaker** can break

Breaking **capacity** or interrupting rating is the current that a **fuse**, circuit breaker, or other electrical apparatus is able to interrupt without being destroyed or causing an electric arc with unacceptable duration.

Page 138

Refer to **clause 1.4.70** - Overcurrent: The Wiring Rules defines an overcurrent as a current \_\_\_\_\_\_. 1. 4. 90 Overcurrent

A current exceeding the rated value of electrical equipment.

Refer to **clause 1.5.9** - Protection against overcurrent:

Protection against overcurrent may be provided by either of two methods - w) \_\_\_\_\_

..,

x)\_\_\_

1.5.9 Protection against overcurrent

Protection shall be provided against injury or property damage

because of excessive temperatures or electromechanical stressescaused by any overcurrents likely to arise in live conductors.Protection may be provided by one of the following methods:(a) Automatic disconnection on the occurrence of an overcurrent, before this overcurrent attains a dangerous value, taking into account its duration.

(b) Limiting the maximum overcurrent to a safe value and duration.

# Refer to Clause 2.5.1 - General:

\_\_\_\_\_ conductors shall be protected by one or more devices that automatically disconnect the supply in the event of overcurrent, before the overcurrent attains a magnitude or duration that could cause –

\_\_\_\_\_ Or

\_\_\_\_\_ or

## 2.5 PROTECTION AGAINST OVERCURRENT

2.5.1 General

\* 2.5.1.1 General requirements

Active conductors shall be protected by one or more devices that automatically disconnect the supply in the event of overcurrent, before such overcurrent attains a magnitude or duration that could cause injury to persons or livestock or damage because of excessive temperatures or electromechanical stresses in the electrical installation.

Protection against overcurrent shall consist of protection against -

bb) \_\_\_\_\_\_ and

cc) \_\_\_

Protection against overcurrent shall consist of protection against-

(a) overload current, in accordance with Clauses 2.5.2 and 2.5.3; and

(b) short-circuit current, in accordance with Clauses 2.5.2 and 2.5.4.

Refer to Clause 2.5.1.2 – Submains and final subcircuits

An overcurrent protective device or devices ensuring protection against overload current and short circuit current shall be placed at the

dd) \_\_\_\_\_\_ of every circuit and at each point where a

ee) \_\_\_\_\_\_ occurs in the current carrying capacity of conductors.

2.5.1.2 Consumer mains

\* Overcurrent protection of consumer mains shall be arranged in accordance with one of the following:

(a) Short-circuit protection and overload protection shall be provided at the origin of the consumer mains (the point of supply) (see Notes 1 and 2).

(b) Short-circuit protection shall be provided at the origin of the consumer mains and overload protection shall be provided at the main switchboard (see Notes 1, 3, and 4.)

(c) Short-circuit protection need not be provided where overload protection is provided at the main switchboard and the consumer mains are constructed and installed in accordance with Clause 3.9.7.1.2 (see Notes 1 and 5).

This arrangement is regarded as unprotected consumer mains.

\* Unprotected consumer mains are those that are not protected by a service protective device (SPD) as shown in Figure 2.1. Refer to Figures 5.6(A), 5.6(B) and 5.6(C) for the earthing requirements for enclosures containing service protection devices.

Refer to **Clause 2.5.2** – Devices for protection against both overload and short circuit currents.

Protective devices providing protection against both overload and short circuit current shall be capable of breaking any overcurrent up to and including the \_\_\_\_\_

\_ at the point where the device is installed.

2.5.2 Devices for protection against both overload and short-circuit currents

Protective devices providing protection against both overload and shortcircuit current shall be capable of breaking any overcurrent up to and including the prospective short-circuit current at the point where the device

is installed.

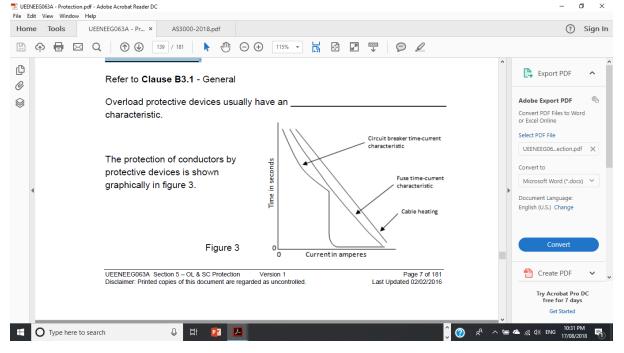
The device shall comply with the requirements of Clauses 2.5.3 and 2.5.4.

### Refer to **Clause 1.4.38** – Current, overload

An overload current is an overcurrent occurring in a circuit that is \_\_\_\_\_\_

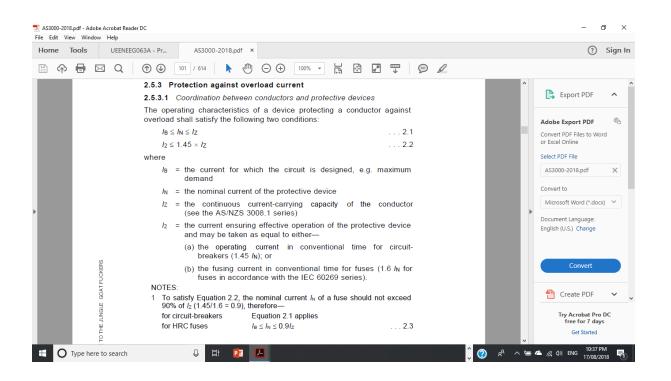
## 1.4.42 Current, overload

An overcurrent occurring in a circuit that is electrically sound.



### Inverse time characteristics

UEENEEG063A - Protection.p File Edit View Window		– 0 ×
Home Tools	UEENEEG063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf	⑦ Sign In
🖹 🔶 🖶 🖂	Q 🕐 🕑 140 / 181 🖡 🖑 🕞 🕂 115% 🗸 🙀 😰 🐺 🦻 🖉	
₽ ⊘ \$	Section 5 – OL & SC Protection	Adobe Export PDF
•	The conductor is deemed to be protected if its damage curve is to the of the time/current characteristic curve of the protective device.	Select PDF File UEENEEGO6ection.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) V Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
	0 Currentin amperes	Create PDF V Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Get Started
O Type here to     Above     UEENEEG063A - Protection.;     File Edit View Window     Home Tools	vdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC	② x <sup>A</sup> ∧ ≌ ▲ 20 ENG 17/08/2018 ₹1 - □ × (?) Sign In
🖹 🔶 🖶 🖂	Q 🕐 W 140 / 181 🖡 🖑 🔾 🕂 100% 🗸 📙 🔁 🐺 🗭 🖉	
¢	Refer to Clause 2.5.3.1 – Coordination between conductors and protective devices	L Export PDF
@ \$	The operating characteristics of a device protecting a conductor against overload shall satisfy the following two conditions –	Adobe Export PDF Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
	Circuit Breaker HRC Fuse	Select PDF File UEENEEG06ection.pdf ×
•	Coordination	Convert to Microsoft Word (*.doc)
	Overload protection	English (U.S.) Change
		😷 Create PDF 🗸 🗸
		Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Get Started
Type here to	search 🔱 🛱 📴 🔼	変 g <sup>Q</sup> へ 镭 ▲ 涙 如 ENG 10:36 PM - 17/08/2018 号



# Example 1:

A circuit with a maximum demand of 15A is to be protected by a miniature circuit breaker. Determine each of the following values - a)maximum demand of the circuit,  $I_B =$ \_\_\_\_\_

b)minimum acceptable current rating for the circuit breaker, IN = \_\_\_\_\_

c)minimum acceptable current carrying capacity for the circuit cable, Iz = \_\_\_\_\_

d)minimum current required to make circuit breaker trip, I2 = \_\_\_\_\_

Ib = 15A IN > = IB 15A Iz>= IB 15A I2 = 1,45 IN or 1,45 x 15A

코 UEENEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC File Edit View Window Help	– 0 ×
Home Tools UEENEEG063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf	? Sign In
🖺 🏟 🖶 🖂 Q, 🕜 🕑 141 / 181 🖡 🖑 🕞 🕂 125% 🔹 🙀 🐼 🛃 🐺 🥬 🖉	
	Export PDF
Example 2:	Adobe Export PDF 👘
A circuit with a maximum demand of 15A is to be protected by a fuse. Determine each of the following values -	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File
a) maximum demand of the circuit, $I_B = $	UEENEEG06ection.pdf ×
b) minimum acceptable current rating for the fuse, $I_N =$	Convert to
	Microsoft Word (*.docx)
*       c) minimum acceptable current carrying capacity for the circuit cable, $I_z$ =         d) minimum current required to make the fuse operate, $I_2$ =	Document Language:     English (U.S.) Change
Does the circuit arrangement provide correct coordination of the load, protective device and cable?	Convert
	🚹 Create PDF 🗸 🗸
	Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days
Does the circuit arrangement provide adequate overload protection?	Get Started
	へ 管 🌰 🌈 (小) ENG 11:10 PM 17/08/2018

# Do it yourself

# Example 3:

A 2.5mm<sub>2</sub>, copper, 2-core and earth, insulated and sheathed flat cable supplies a 4.8kW, 240V hot water system. The circuit is protected by a circuit breaker. The cable is installed in non-metallic conduit in air and has a current carrying capacity of 22A.

Note: The current carrying capacity is determined using AS/NZS 3008.

Determine the following -

(a) Maximum demand current (IB) \_\_\_\_

(b) Nominal current of circuit protective device (IN) \_\_\_\_\_

Does the circuit arrangement provide correct coordination of the load, protective device and cable?

\_\_\_\_\_

Does the circuit arrangement provide adequate overload protection?

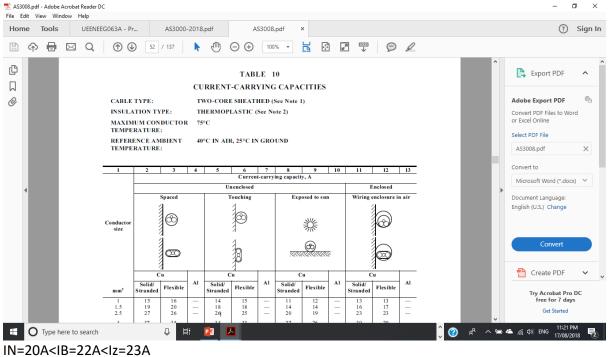
IN= C1 Hotwater

ome Tool	s	UEENEEG063A - Pr AS3000-2018.pdf ×						? S	ign
ቀ 🗄		☑ Q. ① ④ 465 / 614 🕨 ④	⊕ 100% ▼ 🛱 🕀		9 L				
							^	Export PDF	^
	_		BLE C1 (continued)					Adobe Export PDF	Ch
	_	1	2	3	4	5		Convert PDF Files to Word	
		Load group	Single domestic electrical installation or individual living unit per phase <sup>(1)</sup>	2 to 5 living units per phase	6 to 20 6 to 20 living units per phase	21 or more living units per phase		or Excel Online Select PDF File	
				Loading asso	ciated with ind	ividual units		AS3000-2018.pdf	×
	(C)		50% connected load	15 A	2.8 A per	living unit		Convert to	
		socket-outlets rated at more than 10 A for the connection thereof <sup>(8)</sup>						Microsoft Word (*.docx)	~
	(d)	Fixed space heating or airconditioning equipment, saunas or socket-outlets rated at more than 10 A for the connection thereof $^{(8,\ 11)}$	75% connected load	75% connected load	75% conn	ected load	Þ	Document Language: English (U.S.) Change	
СОР	(e)	Instantaneous water heaters:(12)	33.3% connected load	6 A per liv	ring unit	100 A + 0.8 A per living unit			
COPYRIGHT	(f)	Storage water heaters(13)	Full-load current	6 A per liv	ring unit	100 A + 0.8 A per living unit		Convert	
4	(g)	Spa and swimming pool heaters	75% of the largest spa, plus 7 remainder	75% of the largest	swimming pool,	plus 25% of the			
	(h)	Communal lighting <sup>(6, 7)</sup>	Not applicable	Fu	II connected loa	d		1 Create PDF	~
	(i)	Socket-outlets not included in load groups (j) and (m) $below^{(8,\ 10,\ 14)}$	Not applicable	2 A per poin	t, up to a maxim	um of 15 A		Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days	:
11.00 x 8.50 in	<	Permanently connected electrical equipment not exceeding 10 A				,	~	Get Started	

Load group F Column 2 Full load = 4800/240 = 20A Thus IN= 20A IB=22A IZ AS3008

A 2.5mm<sub>2</sub>, copper, 2-core and earth, Assume V75 Assume Enclosed in air Table 3.2

2 cores--- Item 7 Table 10+11 Col 11 to 13 Table 12 Col 9 and 11 V75 Table 10--- Col 11 Solid strand Iz = 23A



Refer to <b>Clause 1.4.39</b> - Current, short-circuit A fault resulting from a fault of impedance between conductors having a difference in potential under normal operating conditions. The fault path may include the path from active via earth to neutral. This current is also referred to as Short circuits may occur between – hh)
ii)
<pre>jj)</pre>
'bolted fault' . It is the maximum value, at the relevant points for the existing installation. Unless otherwise stated, it is the three-phase r.m.s. value
Short circuits may occur between – hh)
ii)
jj)
Line to line/ Line to neutral 3 lines
Refer to <b>Clause 2.5.4.1</b> – Determination of prospective fault current The prospective short-circuit current at every relevant point of the electrical installation shall be determined either by or measurement. Devices used for protection against short circuit currents may be – ; or
2.5.4.1 Determination of prospective short-circuit current The prospective short-circuit current at every relevant point of the electrical
installation shall be determined either by calculation or by measurement Circuit breaker/Fuse
Refer to <b>Clause 2.5.4.5</b> – Characteristics of short-circuit protective devices The breaking capacity shall be not less than the at the point where the devices are installed.
Maximum demand
However, a lower capacity protective device is permitted provided another protective device (having the required breaking capacity) is installed on the
These devices are known as

2.5.2 Devices for protection against both overload and short-circuit

currents

Protective devices providing protection against both overload and shortcircuit current shall be capable of breaking any overcurrent up to and

including the prospective short-circuit current at the point where the device is installed.

The device shall comply with the requirements of Clauses 2.5.3 and 2.5.4. Exception: A protective device having a breaking capacity below the value of the prospective short-circuit current may be used in conjunction with another device in accordance with Clause 2.5.7.2.

2.5.7.2 Coordination of protective devices

# \* 2.5.7.2.1 General

Coordination of protective devices requires consideration of both discrimination (selectivity) and backup (cascading) protection.

Discrimination (selectivity) between protective devices depends on the operating characteristics of two or more protective devices such that the protective device for the downstream circuit shall operate for a given fault current while the protective device(s) for the upstream circuit shall not operate.

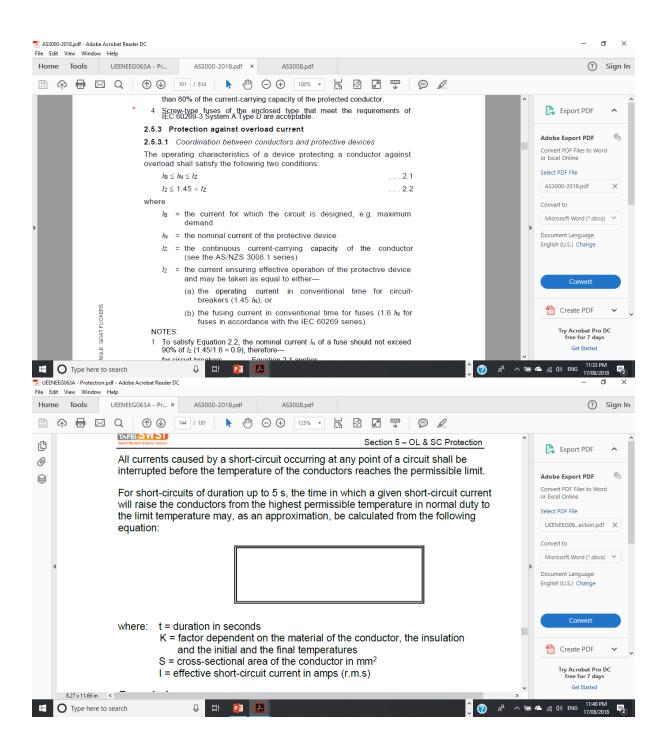
Backup (cascading) depends on the characteristics of each of the two devices as well as the behaviour of the two devices when operating in series. This includes the energy let through when sharing the fault as well as the peak current withstand of the downstream device

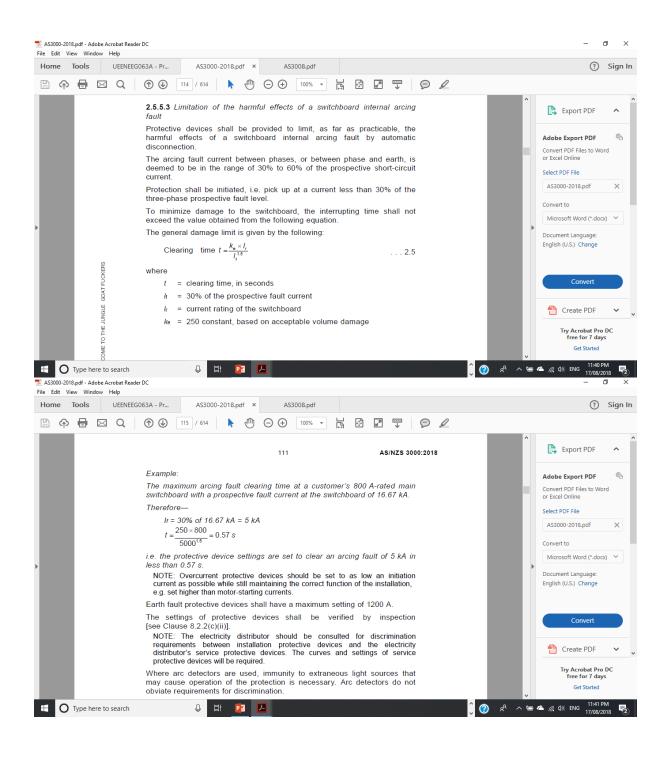
2.5.2 Devices for protection against both overload and short-circuit currents

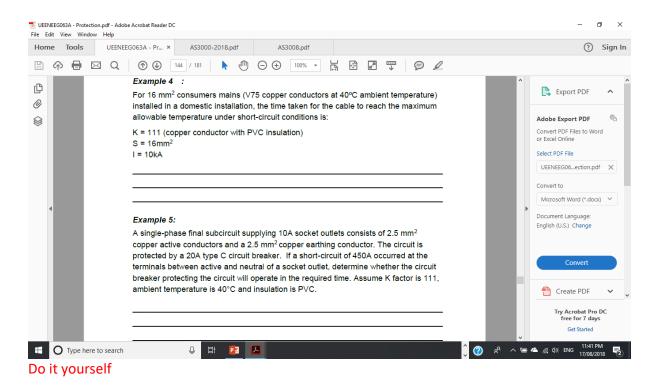
Protective devices providing protection against both overload and shortcircuit current shall be capable of breaking any overcurrent up to and

including the prospective short-circuit current at the point where the device is installed.

The device shall comply with the requirements of Clauses 2.5.3 and 2.5.4





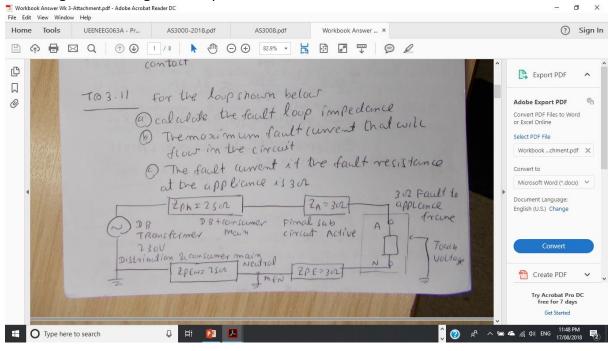


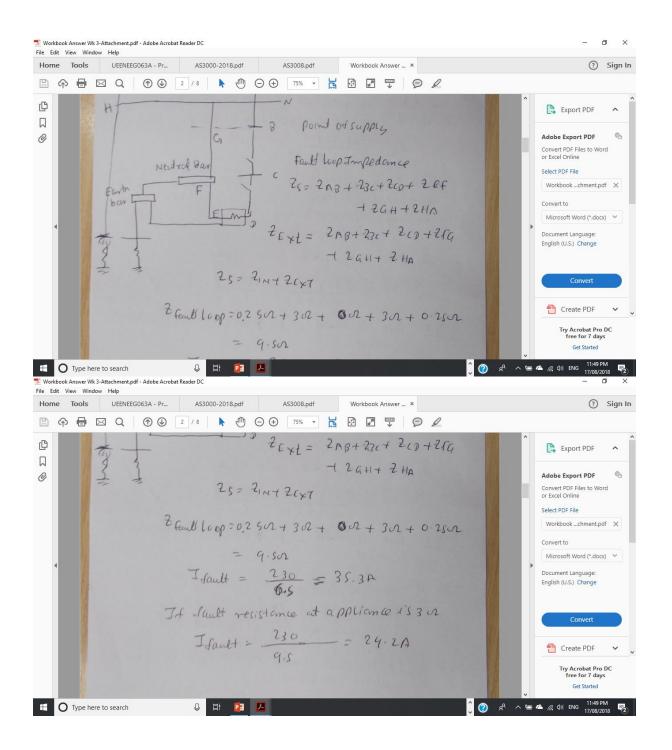
## EARTH FAULT LOOP

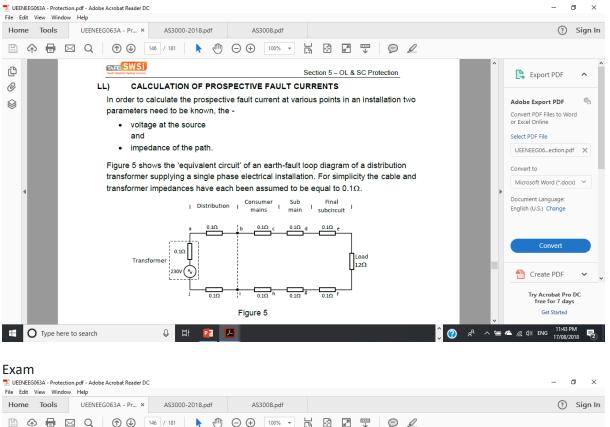
Refer to AS/NZS 3000 Section 1 definitions for 'Earth Fault Loop Impedance'. Earth fault loop impedance is the impedance of the \_\_\_\_\_

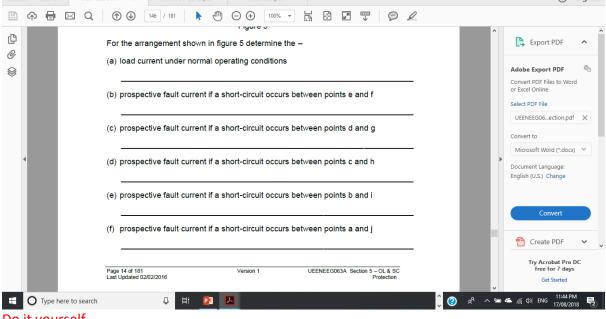
# 1.4.49 Earth fault-loop impedance

The impedance of the earth fault-current loop (active-to-earth loop) starting and ending at the point-of-earth fault







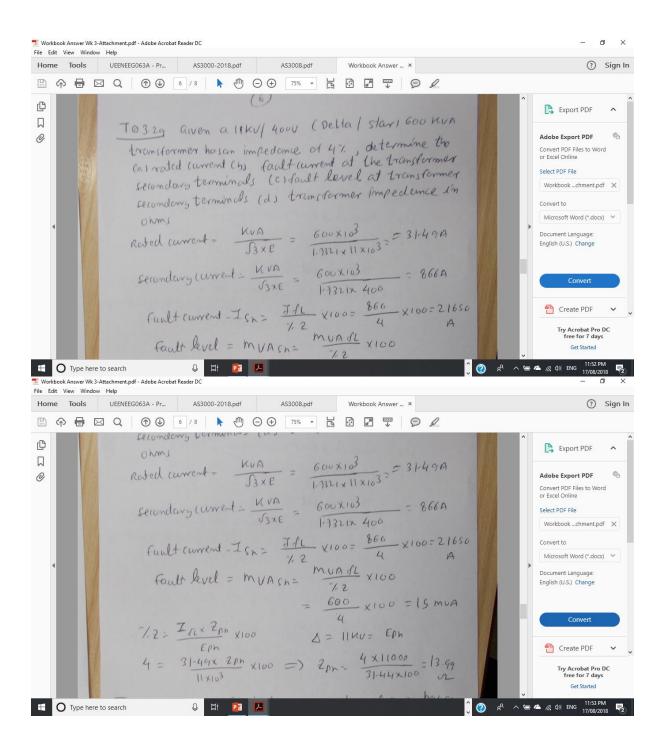


Do it yourself

UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Ac File Edit View Window Help	ibat Reader DC		– 0 ×
Home Tools UEENEEGO	A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf AS3008.pdf	Workbook Answer	? Sign In
🖺 🏟 🖶 🖂 🔍	147 / 181		
С Ф	Figure 6 shows a simplified layout of an electrical	installation and its respective	Export PDF
€	fault levels.	Distribution Board 2 Fault Fault level 3	Adobe Export PDF Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File UEENEEG06_ection.pdf × Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) ~ Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
	the highest and finishing with the lowest. mm) nn) oo) pp) if a 240V, single pole, 20A type C circuit breaker v switchboard shown in figure 6, what would be the circuit breakers?	vas to be installed on each likely differences between the three	Convert Create PDF Try Acrobat Pro DC Free for 7 days Get Started
Type here to search	0 H <u>P</u>	۴ 🕥 🗘	へ 🖮 🌰 🧖 🕼 ENG 17/08/2018 😼
Level 1 / Level 4			

# Transformer Rating

UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adob File Edit View Window Help	e Acrobat Reader DC		– 0 ×
	IG063A - Pr.,. × AS3000-2018.pdf AS3008.pdf Workbook Answer		? Sign In
🖺 🗇 🖶 🖂 🔍	① ③ 148 / 181     N ③ ④ ④ 100% ▼ 日 ⑤ □ ⑦ □ ⑦ □ 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		
۵	Based on the work covered in previous units -	^	Export PDF
© \$	Three phase transformer rating, measured in VA, is given by -		Adobe Export PDF Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File
	Transformer rated current, measured in amperes -		UEENEEG06ection.pdf X
			Microsoft Word (*.docx)
			Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
	Transformer impedance, measured in ohms –		Convert
			🚹 Create PDF 🗸 🗸
			Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days
8.27 x 11.69 in	Fault level at the transformer secondary terminals, measured in VA	~	Get Started
Type here to search	0 H 📴 🔼	ጽ ላ 🖷 🕯	🌥 🌈 ¢୬) ENG 11:51 PM 17/08/2018 🔁



UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC File Edit View Window Help	– 0 ×
Home Tools UEENEEG063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf AS3008.pdf Workbook Answer	③ Sign In
🖺 💠 🖶 🖂 🔾 🕜 🕢 149 / 181 🖡 🖑 🕞 🕁 100% 🗸 🛱 🖉 🐺 👂 🖉	
A 400/230V, 500kVA transformer has a nominated fault level of 10MVA, determine the -         a) prospective fault current at the transformer	Export PDF
b) transformer impedance in ohms.	Adobe Export PDF Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File
	UEENEEG06ection.pdf ×
Example 8:     A 400/230V, 500kVA transformer has a prospective fault current of 14.4kA, what is	Microsoft Word (*.docx) Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
the impedance per phase of the transformer?	Convert
	Create PDF 🗸 🗸
UEENEEG063A Section 5 - OL & SC Protection Version 1 Page 17 of 181 Disclaimer: Printed copies of this document are regarded as uncontrolled. Last Updated 02/02/2016	Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Get Started
Do it yourself           Wk3 Class Lessons,pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC           File         Edit         View         Window         Help           Home         Tools         UEENEEG063A - Pr         AS3000-2018.pdf         AS3008.pdf         Wk3 Class Lessons. ×           Image: Provide the image	– o × (?) Sign In
0	Export PDF
B (1045 (A) getter sutter tendeture	
400/100 - SOOKON 1/2= ILL X2M X100	Adobe Export PDF  Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
100/332 - 200 KW 100 7/2= TL (21) x100 2000 KWL /2= Com x100 Com RUISUNTAL-10 KA	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File
$\begin{cases} kenf_{33}, & \forall i = 3 \text{ for a start}, \\ 2 \text{ is of an atom in } \\ \neq 3 \text{ for a start}, \\ \neq 3 \text{ for a start, a start}, \\ 2 \text{ for a start}, \\ 2  for a$	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} $	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File Wk3 Class Lessons.pdf X
$\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}$	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File Wk3 Class Lessons.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) Y Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
$\frac{4\omega_{121}^{2}}{21c} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{c_{1}} \frac{5\omega_{1}}{c_{1}} \frac{1}{c_{1}} \frac{1}{c_{1}}$	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File Wk3 Class Lessons.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) V Document Language:
$\frac{4e_{1}}{21} = \frac{2e_{1}}{21} + \frac{2e_{1}}{21$	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File Wk3 Class Lessons.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) V Document Language: English (U.S.) Change
$ \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 $	Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File Wk3 Class Lessons.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) V Document Language: English (U.S.) Change

File Edit View Window Help Home Tools UEENEEG		
TIGHTE TOOLS DEENEEG	063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf AS3008.pdf Wk3 Class Lessons.	? Sign In
B 🕈 🖶 🖂 Q	(*) (J) / 181 (*) (-) (+) 100% (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*)	
	Example 9:         For the arrangement shown in figure 7 determine the -         a) fault level at the supply source         b) prospective fault current at the source         c) ohmic impedance of the source         d) prospective fault current at the switchboard         e) prospective fault current at the load.         voltage source       0.0441Ω         witchboard       0.4066Ω         Load         400/230V         500KVA         %Z = 5%         Figure 7	Export PDF     Adobe Export PDF     Convert PDF Files to Word     or Excel Online     Select PDF File     UEENEEGO6ection.pdf X     Convert to     Microsoft Word (*.docx)  <     Document Language:     English (U.S.) Change     Convert
		Create PDF V Try Acrobat Pro DC free for 7 days Get Started
Type here to search	U H 🗾 📕	へ 🖮 🕿 🧖 dッ) ENG 11:56 PM 🌄
Do it yourself		
UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe File Edit View Window Help	Acrobat Reader DC	– 0 ×
_		
🖺 🔶 🖶 🖂 🔍	063A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf AS3008.pdf Wk3 Class Lessons.	③ Sign In
	(*) (*) / 181 (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*) (*)	⑦ Sign In
	①       151 / 181       N       ①       ○       ①       100% ▼       □       □       □       □       ∅       ∅       ∅         Section 5 - OL & SC Protection </td <td><ul> <li>Sign In</li> <li>Export PDF</li> </ul></td>	<ul> <li>Sign In</li> <li>Export PDF</li> </ul>
	⑦       ●       151 / 181       ▶       ●       100% ▼       ▶       ●	Export PDF
C	①       151 / 181       N       ①       ○       ①       100% ▼       □       □       □       □       ∅       ∅       ∅         Section 5 - OL & SC Protection </td <td>Adobe Export PDF</td>	Adobe Export PDF
С С	• ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ●	Adobe Export PDF A Convert PDF B Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online
С С		Adobe Export PDF A Adobe Export PDF C Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File
С С	Image: Section 5 - 0L & SC Protection         Example 10:         For the supply system shown in figure 8, determine -         a) rated secondary current of the transformer         b) fault current at the transformer secondary terminals         c) fault current at the main switchboard         d) fault current at the distribution board.	Adobe Export PDF A Adobe Export PDF A Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File UEENEEG06_ection.pdf X
С С	Image: Section b - OL & SC Protection         Example 10:         For the supply system shown in figure 8, determine -         a) rated secondary current of the transformer         b) fault current at the transformer secondary terminals         c) fault current at the main switchboard         d) fault current at the distribution board.         Image: Supply transformer         Image: Supply transformer         Supply transformer         Image: Supply transformer	Adobe Export PDF A Adobe Export PDF B Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File UEENEEGO6_ection.pdf X Convert to
С С	Image: Section b = OL & SC Protection         Section b = OL & SC Protection         Example 10:         For the supply system shown in figure 8, determine -         a) rated secondary current of the transformer         b) fault current at the transformer secondary terminals         c) fault current at the main switchboard         d) fault current at the distribution board.         Supply transformer         Supply transformer         Consumer mains z = 0.04Ω	Adobe Export PDF A Adobe Export PDF C Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File UEENEEGO6_ection.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) Y
Ср С	The supply system shown in figure 8, determine -         a) rated secondary current of the transformer         b) fault current at the transformer secondary terminals         c) fault current at the distribution board.         Amount of the distribution board.         Main switchboard         Main switchboard         Main switchboard	Adobe Export PDF A Adobe Export PDF B Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File UEENEEGO6_ection.pdf X Convert to
С С	Terminal Section b - OL & SC Protection         Section b - OL & SC Protection         Example 10:         For the supply system shown in figure 8, determine -         a) rated secondary current of the transformer         b) fault current at the transformer secondary terminals         c) fault current at the main switchboard         d) fault current at the distribution board.         Supply transformer         A 00/230V         Sock/A         Z = 0.004Ω         Main switchboard	Adobe Export PDF A Adobe Export PDF C Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File UEENEEGO6ection.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docv) V Document Language: English (U.S.) Change Convert Convert Convert Try Acrobat Pro DC
Ср С	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Adobe Export PDF A Adobe Export PDF C Convert PDF Files to Word or Excel Online Select PDF File UEENEEGO6ection.pdf X Convert to Microsoft Word (*.docx) ~ Document Language: English (U.S.) Change Convert Convert Convert

# Do it yourself

Page 157

The term 'over-current' is defined as\_\_\_\_\_

- AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_
- 1.4.90 Overcurrent
- A current exceeding the rated value of electrical equipment

What is the meaning of 'overload current?\_\_\_\_\_

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_ 1.4.42 Current, overload An overcurrent occurring in a circuit that is electrically sound.

What is a short circuit current?\_\_\_\_\_

AS/NZS Clause no. \_\_\_\_\_

1.4.43 Current, short-circuit

A fault current resulting from a fault of negligible impedance between live conductors having a difference in potential under normal operating conditions. The fault path may include the path from active via earth to the neutral.

NOTE: This current is also referred to as 'prospective short-circuit current' or a 'bolted fault'. It is the maximum value, at the relevant points for the existing installation. Unless otherwise stated, it is the three-phase r.m.s. value.

3.4.2 Operating temperature limits

The operating temperatures of conductors shall not exceed the limits given in Table 3.2

1.5.9 Protection against overcurrent

Protection shall be provided against injury or property damage

because of excessive temperatures or electromechanical stresses

caused by any overcurrents likely to arise in live conductors.

Protection may be provided by one of the following methods:

(a) Automatic disconnection on the occurrence of an overcurrent, before this overcurrent attains a dangerous value, taking into account its duration.

(c) Limiting the maximum overcurrent to a safe value and duration.

What are the four ways of providing protection against both overload currents and short circuit current?

AS/NZS Clause no.

2.3 CONTROL OF ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

2.3.1 General

Electrical installations shall be provided with devices to prevent or remove hazards associated with the electrical installation and for maintenance of electrically activated equipment.

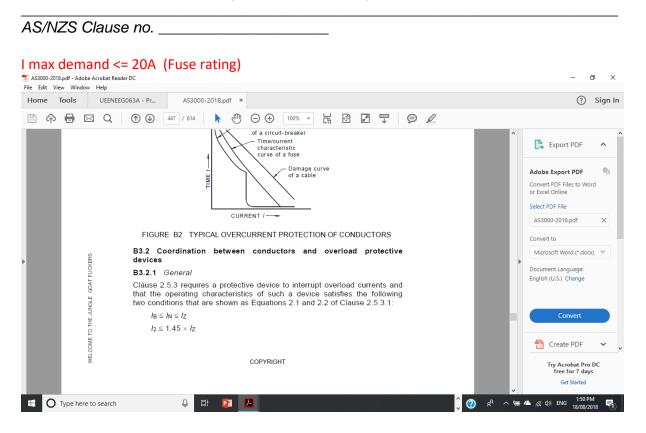
NOTE: The measures specified in this Clause (Clause 2.3) are in addition to, and not alternatives to, the protective measures specified in Clause 2.4.

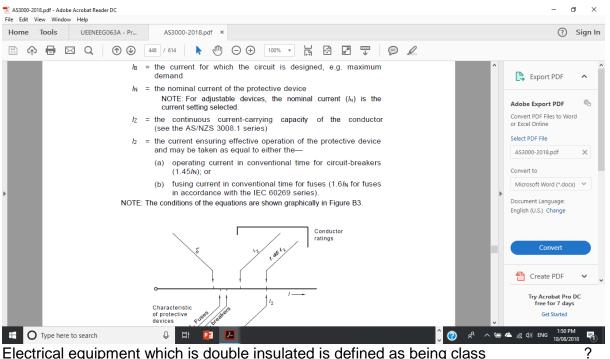
Electrical installations shall include all switching devices or other means of disconnection necessary to enable operations, repairs and maintenance work to be carried out safely.

Any device provided shall comply with the relevant requirements of this Clause (Clause 2.3), in accordance with the intended function or functions. Such devices are classified according to one of the following functions:

- (a) Isolation, in accordance with Clause 2.3.2.2.
- (b) Emergency, in accordance with Clause 2.3.5.2.
- (c) Mechanical maintenance, in accordance with Clause 2.3.6.2.
- (d) Functional (control), in accordance with Clause 2.3.7.2.

To adequately protect a cable from the heating effects of an electric current, a fuse must operate within conventional time with a prescribed value of current. What is the value of current that ensures effective operation of a 20 Amp fuse?





Electrical equipment which is double insulated is defined as being class *AS/NZS Clause no.* 

## 1.4.32 Class II equipment

Equipment in which protection against electric shock does not rely on basic insulation only, but in which additional safety precautions, such as double insulation or reinforced insulation, are provided, there being no provision for protective earthing or reliance upon installation conditions. Such equipment may be one of the following types:

(a) Equipment having durable and substantially continuous enclosures of insulating material that envelope all metal parts, with the exception of small parts, such as nameplates, screws and rivets, that are isolated from live parts by insulation at least equivalent to reinforced insulation. Such equipment is called insulation-encased Class II equipment.

(b) Equipment having a substantially continuous metal enclosure, in which double insulation is used throughout, except for those parts where reinforced insulation is used because the application of double insulation is manifestly impracticable. Such equipment is called metal-encased Class II equipment.

(c) Equipment that is a combination of the types described in Items (a) and (b).

If a cable rated at 20A is overloaded to 40A, the extra value of the heating effect is \_\_\_\_\_\_ times greater than the original value.

## AS/NZS Clause no. \_

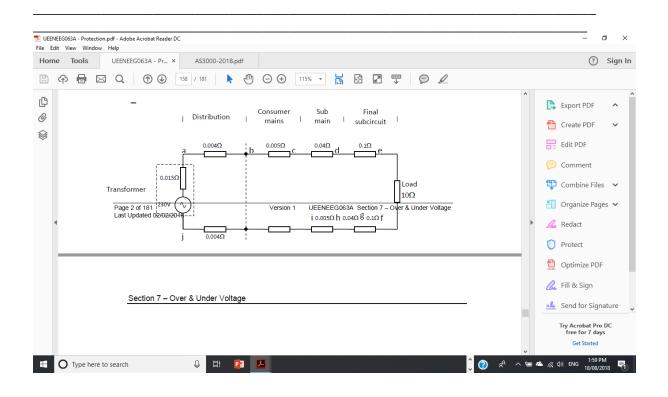
1.5.8 Protection against thermal effects in normal service Electrical installations shall be arranged so that there is no risk of ignition of flammable materials because of high temperature or electric arc in normal service. During normal operation of the electrical equipment there shall be no risk of persons or livestock suffering burns. The selection and installation of electrical equipment shall be such that the temperature characteristics of the electrical equipment, properly installed and operated, do not adversely affect the electrical equipment, the electrical installation itself or any other installation, whether electrical or otherwise. Four

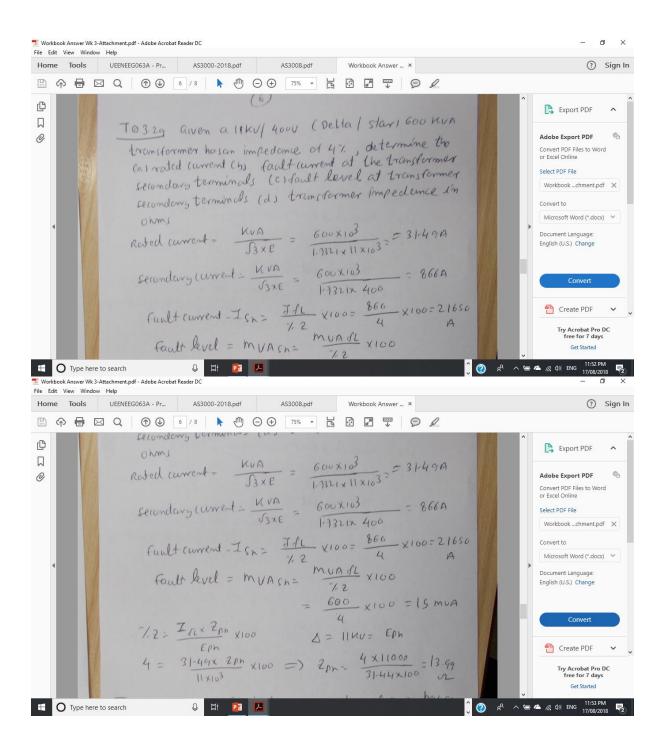
Refer to figure 9 below and determine the following: (a) load current under normal operating conditions \_\_\_\_\_\_

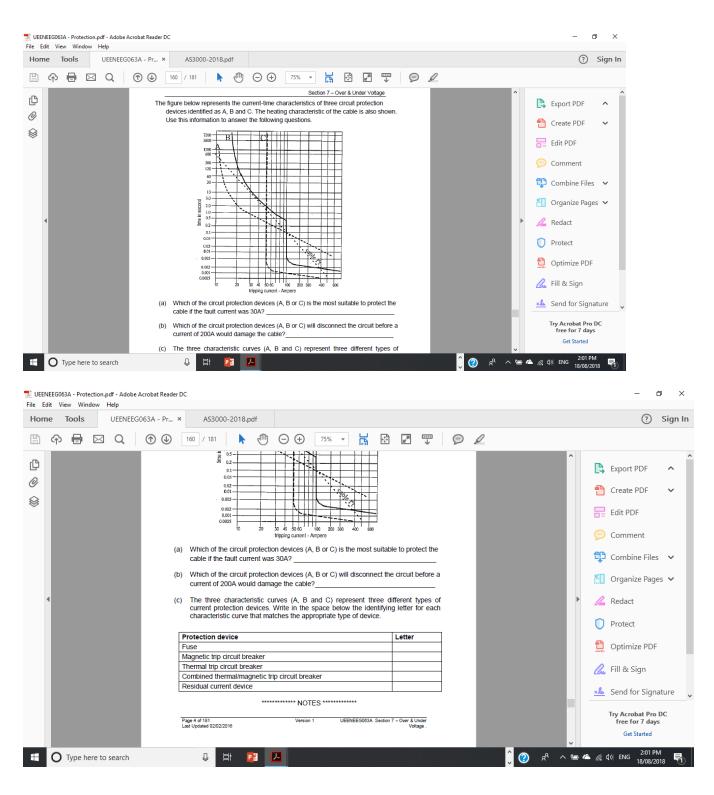
(b) prospective fault current if a short-circuit occurs across the load.

(c) prospective fault current if a short-circuit occurs between points b and i

(d) An appropriately rated circuit breaker (minimum current AND kA rating). Explain.







# **Classification of Circuit Breakers**

Circuit breakers are classified by:

- number of poles (ranging from single pole to four pole with the two and four pole types available with one unprotected pole)
- protection against external influences (enclosed or unenclosed)
- rated voltage, frequency and current (230/400V; 50Hz with current ratings such as 6A, 8A, 10A, 13A, 16A, 20A, 25A, 32A, 40A, 50A, 63A, 80A, 100A, and 125A)

- range of instantaneous tripping current
- Type B having a tripping range of 3 to 5 times rated current (mean trip 4 times)
- Type C having a tripping range of 5 to 10 times rated current (mean trip 7.5 times)
- Type D having a tripping range of 10 to 50 times rated current See the time current curves in **Fig. F-3-5-5**.

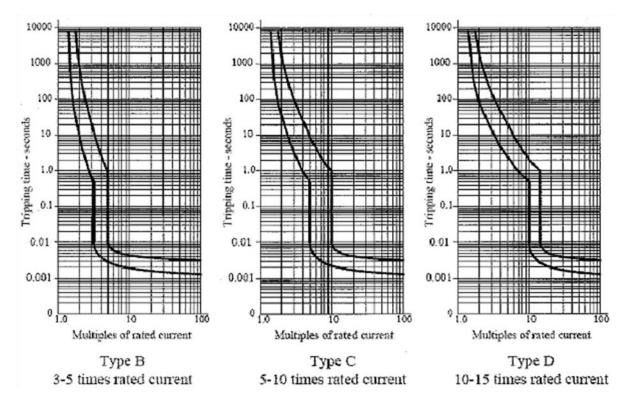


Fig. F-3-5-5 Time-Current Tripping Curves for type B, C, and D Circuit Breaker

(1) A
(2) C
(3) C- Magnatic CB, A= Thermal CB B – Fuse

Page 162

## VOLTAGE LEVELS

Refer to clause 1.4.98 - Voltage:

Differences of potential normally exist between conductors and between conductorsand earth as follows -

>extra low voltage - not exceeding \_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ ripple free dc

>low voltage - exceeding extra low voltage, but not exceeding \_\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_\_

**>high voltage** - exceeding low voltage.

1.4.128 Voltage

Differences of potential normally existing between conductors or between conductors and earth as follows:

(a) Extra-low voltage Not exceeding 50 V a.c. or 120 V ripple-free d.c.

(b) Low voltage Exceeding extra-low voltage, but not exceeding

1000 V a.c. or 1500 V d.c.

(c) High voltage Exceeding low voltage.

# SUPPLY CHARACTERISTICS

Refer to **clause 1.6.2** - Supply characteristics: The nominal voltage and tolerances for low voltage supply systems and electricalinstallations in Australia are -

\_\_\_\_\_ (in accordance with AS 60038)..

1.6.2 Supply characteristics

- The following characteristics of the electricity supply shall be determined:
- (a) Nature of current, a.c. or d.c.
- (b) Nature and number of conductors, as follows:
- (i) Active (phase), neutral and protective earthing conductors for a.c.

(ii) Equivalent conductors for d.c.

(c) Voltage and voltage tolerances.

NOTE: The nominal voltage and tolerances for low voltage supply systems and electrical installations are-

(a) for Australia, 230/400 V + 10% to  $\cdot$  6% (in accordance with AS 60038); and

(b) for New Zealand, 230/400 V + 6% to  $\cdot$  6% (in accordance with

IEC 60038).

(d) Frequency and frequency tolerances.

- (e) Maximum current that can be supplied.
- (f) Prospective short-circuit current.

NOTE: Information regarding prospective short-circuit and fault currents at the point of supply may be obtained from the local electricity distributor.

- (g) Protective measures inherent in the supply, e.g. MEN earthing system.
- (h) Limits on the use of equipment.
- (i) Harmonic current or other limitations.

## Example 1:

Calculate the range of voltages available at the point of supply for a single phase installation given the above voltages and tolerances.

Within a distribution system – installations closer to the distribution transformer will have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_voltages at the point of supply installations further from the distribution transformer will have \_\_\_\_\_\_ voltages at the point of supply

## higher/lower

## Example: 2

Using the NSW Service and Installation Rules, provide two examples of equipment that would cause fluctuations in the voltage and distortion of the supply wave shape: Voltage Fluctuation:

∕ _			
0			

Wave Shape Distortion:

F	>	 	 	
	<u>_</u>			

# **Bad Wiring**

Bad wiring can also lead to voltage fluctuations. This happens when the wiring has been designed to handle less electricity than what the entire unit might need. Or, there could be ungrounded outlets that leak electricity.

Other possible wiring-related causes are damage caused by insects and pests or a disconnection.

To detect if the voltage fluctuation is caused by wiring, an electrician or electrical systems expert will use specific equipment. He/she will also fix the problem using special equipment that will prevent the need to access the wiring directly.

# Interference

Interference occurs when a number of sensitive and wrong combinations of electrical devices or machinery are operated on the same circuit. It is common for a lot of electrical devices to cause surges. This can be confirmed by observing the lights when any of the suspected devices or machinery are being used. If the lights (in the same circuit) flicker when said devices or machinery are on, it means you have interference-related voltage fluctuations

As power utilities continue to be pushed to the limits of supply capability, rising energy costs and decreasing power quality will continue to be an issue for consumers. Users continually search for ways to not only reduce energy costs, but also ensure their processes will continue to operate, no matter the quality of the incoming power. To accomplish this, more and more variable frequency drives, UPS systems, and other non-linear loads are being installed. The usual waveform of an alternating current (AC) is generally that of a sine wave or a sinusoidal waveform. This is considered the fundamental waveform. Linear loads draw current in proportion to the sinusoidal voltage. Non-linear loads, such as drives, change their impedance by conducting current only near the peak of the wave. Switching loads on and off during the waveform results in non-sinusoidal current pulses. These pulses introduce reflective currents (harmonics) back into the power distribution system. The non-sinusoidal waveforms have the fundamental wave plus integral multiples of that fundamental wave

Refer to clause 2.1.2 - Selection and installation

Switchgear and control gear shall be selected and installed to perform the following functions or have the following features associated with the proper design, correct construction and safe operation of the electrical installation:

Provide protection of the electrical installation against failure from

\_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ conditions.

2.1.2 Selection and installation

Switchgear and controlgear shall be selected and installed to perform the following functions or have the following features:

(a) Provide control or isolation of the electric al installation, circuits or individual items of apparatus as required for maintenance,

testing, fault detection or repair.

(b) Enable automatic disconnection of supply in the event of an overload, short-circuit or excess earth leakage current in the protected part of the electrical installation.

(c) Provide protection of the electrical installation against failure from overvoltage or undervoltage conditions.

(d) Provide for switchgear and control gear to be grouped and interconnected on switchboards, enclosed against external influences, and located in accessible positions.

(e) Separately control and protect the circuit arrangements without affecting the reliability of supply to, or failure of, other parts of the installation.

\* (f) Installed in accordance with the requirements of this Section, and the additional requirements as specified in the manufacturer's instructions.

Refer to **clause 2.8** – Protection against under voltage. Suitable protective measures shall be taken where the \_\_\_\_\_\_ and subsequent \_\_\_\_\_\_ of voltage; or a \_\_\_\_\_\_ in voltage; could cause \_\_\_\_\_\_ to persons or property

2.8 PROTECTION AGAINST UNDERVOLTAGE

2.8.1 General

Suitable protective measures shall be taken where-

(a) the loss and subsequent restoration of voltage; or

(b) a drop in voltage,

could cause danger to persons or property

# Example 3:

Provide an example of where restoration of voltage after a loss of supply could cause danger.

For best safety practices, machines must be prevented from automatically or unintentionally restarting when a power interruption occurs. To determine if your machine has drop-out (anti-restart) protection, perform the following steps:

- 1. With the motor running, turn off the power to the machine at the motor starter disconnect, or unplug it from the outlet. Do not do this as a normal means of motor stopping unless the electrical system is designed for it.
- 2. Let the motor ramp down to a complete stop.
- 3. Turn the power back on.
- 4. If the machine starts, you do not have drop-out protection.

When a machine is running and then unexpectedly loses power, the main motor stops after a certain rundown time. The safety concern is what happens when the power returns. Perhaps the greatest hazard is that an unexpected motor startup directly initiates hazardous motion. Several methods can be used to prevent unintended machine motor startup, whether for initial start or restart. One commonsense requirement found in machine safety regulations is to protect the main motor start button from accidental operation, such as accidentally bumping the start button. This can be accomplished by using:

- A ring guard around the start button
- A start button that is recessed or flush to the surface
- A fabricated shield over the start button

Safety regulations that reference preventing accidental operation can be found in <u>OSHA</u> <u>1910.217</u> (b)(8)(ii) and ANSI B11.1-2009 (6)(2)(3). OSHA 1910 Subpart O specifies two categories of machines that require a motor starter with an anti-restart feature, also known as drop-out protection. These machines are mechanical power presses (OSHA 1910.217) and woodworking machines (OSHA 1910.213).

In their respective mechanical power press requirements, OSHA 1910.217 (b)(8)(iii) and ANSI B11.1-2009 (6)(2)(4) both state, "All power press controls shall incorporate a type of drive motor starter that will disconnect the drive motor from the power source in the event of

control-voltage or power source failure. Operation of the motor-start button shall be required to restart the motor when voltage conditions are restored to normal."

OSHA 1910.213 (b)(3) for woodworking machines states, "On applications where injury to the operator might result if motors were to restart after power failures, provision shall be made to prevent machines from automatically restarting upon restoration of power."

The most common method to prevent unexpected machine restart after a power failure, then power restoration, is a magnetic-type motor starter. Electrical contacts within the starter are magnetically separated upon loss of power. When power is restored, the main motor start button must be pushed to reconnect the electrical contacts and restart the machine.

Another more compact device designed for smaller machines is a drop-out device that is hard-wired to the machine. This Sensing Saf-Start device features a reset button that must be pushed to restart the machine once power has been lost and then restored.

NFPA 79-2007 "Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery" covers all industrial machines and states in 7.5.3, "Upon restoration of the voltage or upon switching on the incoming supply, automatic or unintentional restarting of the machine shall be prevented when such a restart causes a hazardous condition."

The implication here is for an anti-restart feature – also known as drop-out protection.

For best safety practice, determine if your machine has drop-out/anti-restart protection. Refer to OSHA, ANSI and NFPA 79 for all electrical requirements. It is a safety responsibility to protect against supply interruption or voltage reduction and subsequent restoration

## Refer to clause 2.8.2 – Selection of protective device

Where the re-closure of a protective device is likely to create a dangerous situation, the re-closure shall not be \_\_\_\_\_\_.

## 2.8.2 Selection of protective device

<u>ک</u>\_\_\_\_\_

The characteristics of the undervoltage protective device shall be compatible with the requirements of the appropriate Standards for starting and the use of electrical equipment.

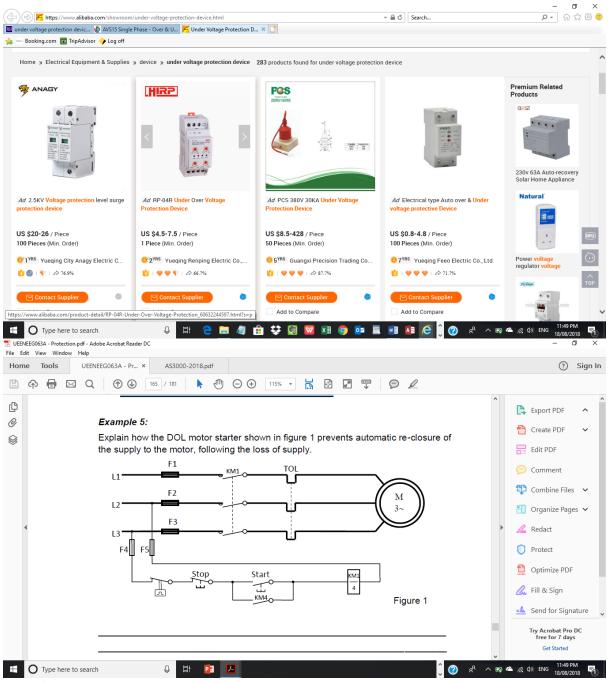
Where the re-closure of a protective device is likely to create a dangerous situation, the re-closure shall not be automatic.

Instantaneous disconnection by the undervoltage device shall not be impaired by contacts that have intentional delays in their operation. Exception: The operation of undervoltage protective devices may be delayed if the operation of the protected electrical equipment allows a brief interruption or loss of voltage without danger

## Example 4:

Provide two examples of under voltage protection devices:

<u>﴾\_\_\_\_</u>



Loss of supply cause KM4 Auxiliary contact will open and without pressing the start button motor will not be energnized

Iome Tools UEENEEGO	63A - Pr × AS3000-2018.pdf					? Sign Ir
A 🖶 🖂 Q	⑦ ④ 166 / 181	5% 🔻 📙 🗄		l		
Exam	ple 6:				^	Export PDF
<ul> <li>For each of the items of equipment listed in table 1, identify if they would be suitable or unsuitable for automatic re-closure of the supply.</li> </ul>						Create PDF V
3	Table 1					Edit PDF
	Equipment	Automatic	Re-closure			🦻 Comment
		Suitable	Unsuitable			😲 Combine Files 🗸 🗸
	Lathe in a fabrication shop					扪 Organize Pages 🗸
4	Conveyor in a mail handling centre				►	🚄 Redact
	Air conditioning system					Protect
	Refrigeration plant for a cool room					<ul> <li>•</li> </ul>
	Power hacksaw					Dptimize PDF
	Sump pump					ፈ Fill & Sign
	Fire hydrant booster pump					🚣 Send for Signature
	Lifts in a multi-storey building					Try Acrobat Pro DC
						free for 7 days

Lathe in a fabrication shop -----Not suitable

Conveyor in a mail handling centre --Suitable

Air conditioning system---- Not suitable

Refrigeration plant for a cool room --Suitable

Power hacksaw ----Not suitable

Sump pump ---- Suitable

Fire hydrant booster pump ---- Suitable Lifts in a multi-storey building --- Suitable

#### OVERVOLTAGE

Refer to **clause 2.7** – Protection against overvoltage Where an electrical installation is protected against over voltages which may causedanger to persons or property the requirements of clauses 2.7.2 and 2.7.3 shallapply.

The causes of overvoltage in an electrical installation include -

A\_\_\_\_\_

# **Top 5 Probable Causes of Over Voltage**

- Power system surges. Due to poor regulation of the power source or power utility company, voltage fluctuations either over or under may occur. ...
- Insulation Failure. The most common form of insulation failure is when there is

grounding of the conductor. ...

- Arcing Ground. ...
- Resonance. ...
- External causes.

2.7.2 Protection by insulation or separation Measures to prevent danger because of faults between live parts of the electrical installation and circuits supplied at higher voltages shall consist of the following: (a) For conductors, the provision of adequate insulation screening or segregation of circuits in accordance with Clause 3.9.8.3. (b) For transformers, the provision of adequate insulation, screening or separation of windings. Transformer windings that operate at different voltages shall be insulated from one another by insulation with a specified test voltage or alternatively separated from one another by means of a conductive screen connected to the protective earthing conductor so as to ensure automatic disconnection of the supply in the event of a fault. 2.7.3 Protection by protective devices Protective devices may be used to protect against the effects of overvoltage arising from such causes as lightning and switching operations. Where installed, such devices shall-(a) limit the (transient) voltage to a value below the insulation level of the electrical installation or the part thereof that the device protects; (b) operate at voltages not less than or equal to the highest voltage likely to occur in normal operation; and (c) cause no hazard to persons or livestock during operation.

## Example 7:

Is it mandatory to provide electrical installations with: >overvoltage protection? Yes/No

Home Tools	UEENEEG063A - P	r × AS3000-2018.pdf					? Sign In
🖹 🗘 🖶		D 168 / 181 🕨 🕀 🕀	115% 🔹 📙	÷	T 🗩 🖉		
C			Sec	tion 7 – Ove	er & Under ∀oltage	^	Export PDF 🔨
0	Example 8	:					💾 Create PDF 🛛 🗸
		ems of equipment listed in table 2 overvoltage.	-	se items f	that are likely to		Edit PDF
		Table 2			_		🦻 Comment
		Equipment	Produce Overvoltage				😲 Combine Files 🗸 🗸
		=qaipinoni	Yes	No			Organize Pages 🗸
4		Electric welder				•	🔏 Redact
		Incandescent lamp					Protect
		Electric motor started DOL					Viroteet
		Radiant heater					<u></u> Optimize PDF
		Induction furnace					🔔 Fill & Sign
		Hot water element					send for Signature
		X-ray machine					Try Acrobat Pro DC
							free for 7 days
							Get Started

### INSTALLATION OF SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

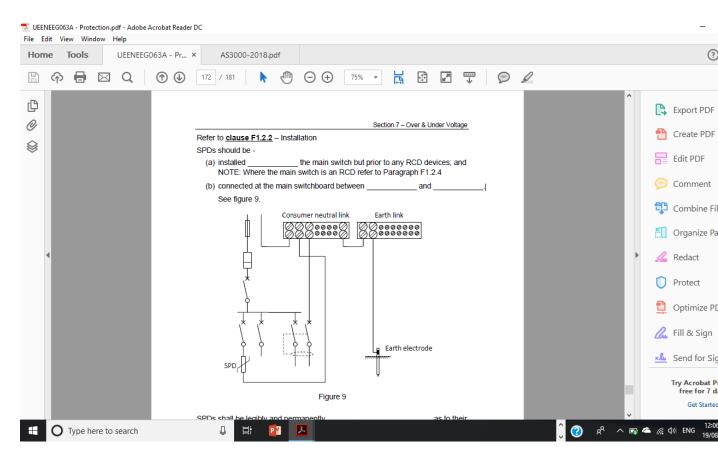
Refer to **clause F1.2** – Selection and installation of SPDs Primary SPDs should be installed near the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the electrical installation or in the

F1.2 Selection and installation of SPDs

F1.2.1 Location

Primary SPDs are installed near the origin of the electrical installation or at

the main switchboard.



# F1.2.2 Installation

SPDs should be-

(a) installed after the main switch but prior to any RCD devices. Where the main switch is an RCD, refer to Paragraph F2.4;

(b) protected by an appropriate fuse or circuit-breaker separate from the SPD;

(c) connected at the main switchboard between phase and neutral; NOTE: Figure F1 shows a typical connection of a primary SPD for a single-phase installation.

(d) connected at switchboards remote from the main switchboard and without MEN connection, from each phase to neutral and from neutral to earth;

NOTE: Figure F2 shows a typical installation of a secondary SPD for a single-phase installation.

(e) be legibly and permanently labelled as to their function, in accordance with Clause 2.10.5.1; and

(e) where alarmed to provide status indication, fail safe in operation.

SPDs shall be legibly and permanently \_\_\_\_\_\_ as to their function, in accordance with Clause 2.9.5.1.

F1.2.2 Installation

SPDs should be-

(a) installed after the main switch but prior to any RCD devices. Where the main switch is an RCD, refer to Paragraph F2.4;

(b) protected by an appropriate fuse or circuit-breaker separate from the SPD; (c) connected at the main switchboard between phase and neutral; NOTE: Figure F1 shows a typical connection of a primary SPD for a single-phase installation. (d) connected at switchboards remote from the main switchboard and without MEN connection, from each phase to neutral and from neutral to earth; NOTE: Figure F2 shows a typical installation of a secondary SPD for a single-phase installation. (e) be legibly and permanently labelled as to their function, in accordance with Clause 2.10.5.1; and (f) where alarmed to provide status indication. fail safe in operation. Refer to clause F1.2.3 – Selection of SPDs For most domestic single-phase supplies in urban environments, a surge rating of -➢Imax = \_\_\_\_\_ kA per phase for an \_\_\_\_\_ µs impulse and aminimum working voltage of \_\_\_\_\_ V a.c. is suitable. In the case of installations in exposed locations, e.g. high lightning areas, long overhead service lines, industrial and commercial premises, it may be prudent to install SPDs with a higher surge rating, typically – ▶ \_\_\_\_\_ kA per phase for an \_\_\_\_\_ µs impulse. F1.2.3 Selection of surge protection devices (SPDs) For most domestic supplies in urban environments, a surge rating of  $I_{max} = 40$  kA per phase for an 8/20 · s impulse and a maximum working voltage of 275 V a.c. to 320 V a.c. is suitable. In the case of installations in exposed locations in high lightning areas. with long overhead service lines, or industrial and commercial premises, it may be prudent to install SPDs with a higher surge rating (typically 100 kA per phase for an 8/20 micros impulse). Refer to **clause F1.2.4** – Overcurrent protective devices The short-circuit withstand of the SPD, together with the overcurrent protective device. shall be not less than the at the point of installation. A 40 kA SPD may be protected by a \_\_\_\_\_\_ HRC fuse or circuit-breaker having a breaking capacity not less than the prospective short-circuit current at the point of installation or by other means recommended by the manufacturer. If an SPD is installed on the load side of an RCD, the RCD shall have a breaking capacity of not less than

## F1.2.4 Overcurrent protective devices

SPDs should be protected against short-circuit by suitable overcurrent protective devices. In accordance with Clause 2.5.2, the short-circuit withstand of the SPD, together with the overcurrent protective device,

should be not less than the prospective short-circuit current at the point of installation.

The current rating of the SPD overcurrent protective device should be-(a) as recommended by the SPD manufacturer but not greater than the manufacturer's declared maximum backup fuse rating; and

(b) less than the rating of the immediate upstream protective device. NOTE: Notwithstanding the above, the following current ratings of HRC fuses or circuit-breakers are suitable for typical domestic applications, such as households:

(a) 32 A for a 40 kA SPD.

or

(b) 63 A for a 100 kA SPD.

If an SPD is installed on the load side of an RCD, the RCD should have a breaking capacity of not less than 3 kA. S-type RCDs, in accordance with AS/NZS 61008.1 and AS/NZS 61009.1 are deemed to satisfy this recommendation.

### Refer to clause F1.2.5 – Connecting conductors

Conductors used to connect an SPD to both the line via the overcurrent protective device, and to the main earthing or neutral conductor, should be not less than \_\_\_\_\_\_ and as "short and direct" as possible, with "no loops". The total conductor length between the two points of connection, including both active and earth/neutral\_must be less than one metre\_ideally\_\_\_\_\_\_ to

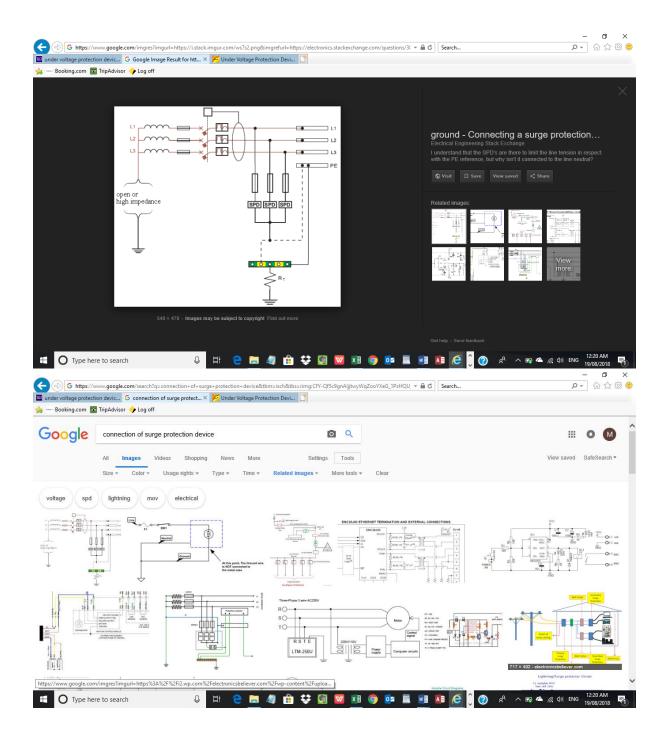
and earth/neutral, must be less than one metre, ideally \_\_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_, overall.

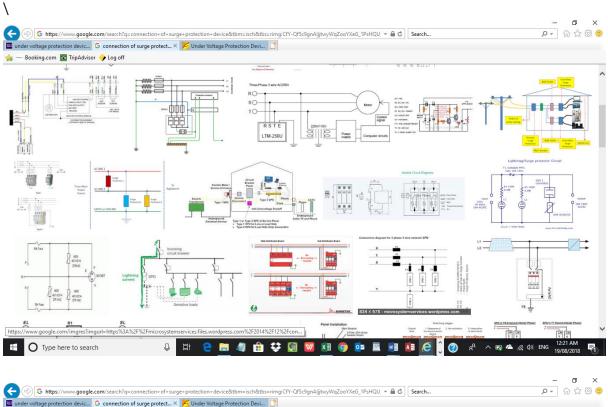
A connection to the neutral link should be as close as practicable to the MEN connection F1. 2.5 Connecting conductors

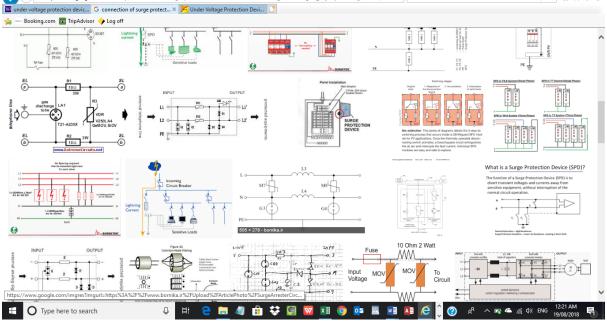
Conductors used to connect an SPD to both the line, via the overcurrent protective device, and to the main earthing or neutral conductor should be consistent with the current rating of the backup fuse or circuit-breaker but should be not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>, be as short and direct as possible and with no loops.

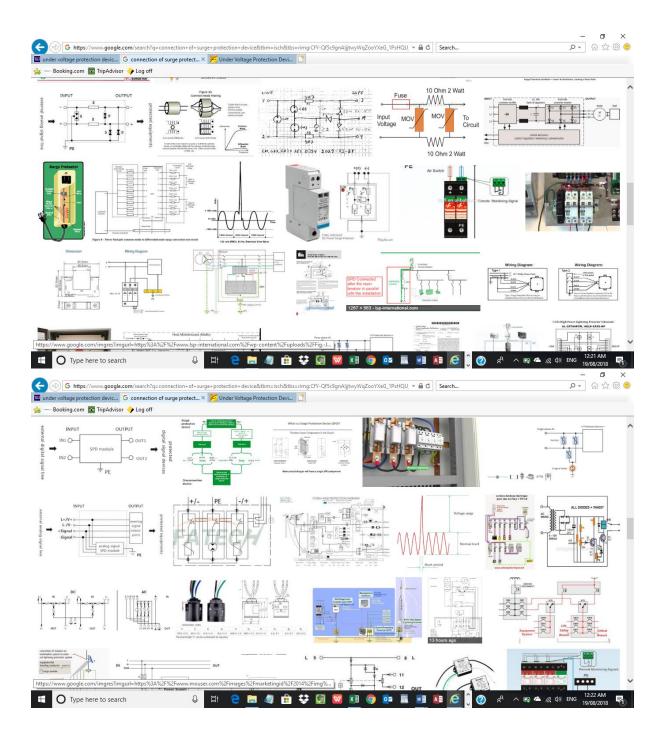
The total conductor length between the two points of connection including both active and earth/neutral should be less than 1 m (ideally 300 mm-600 mm) overall.

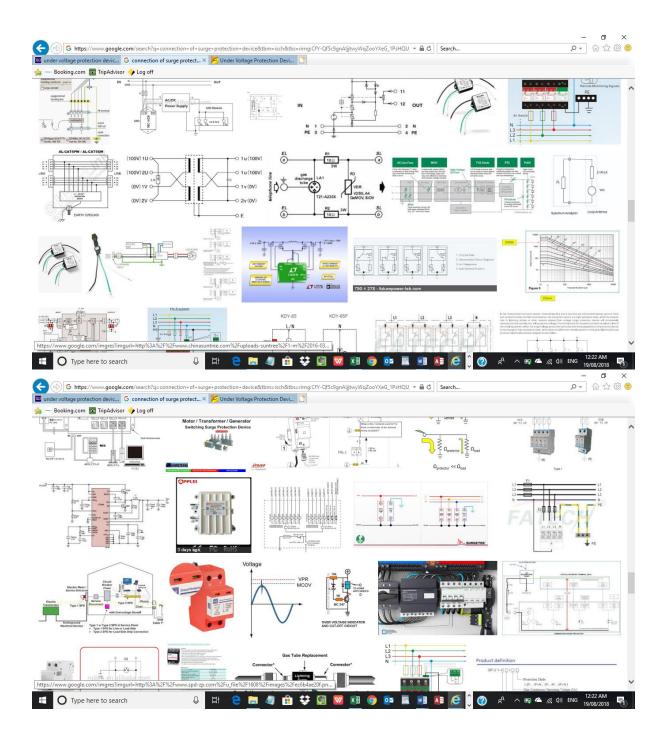
A connection to the neutral conductor should be as close as practicable to the MEN link.

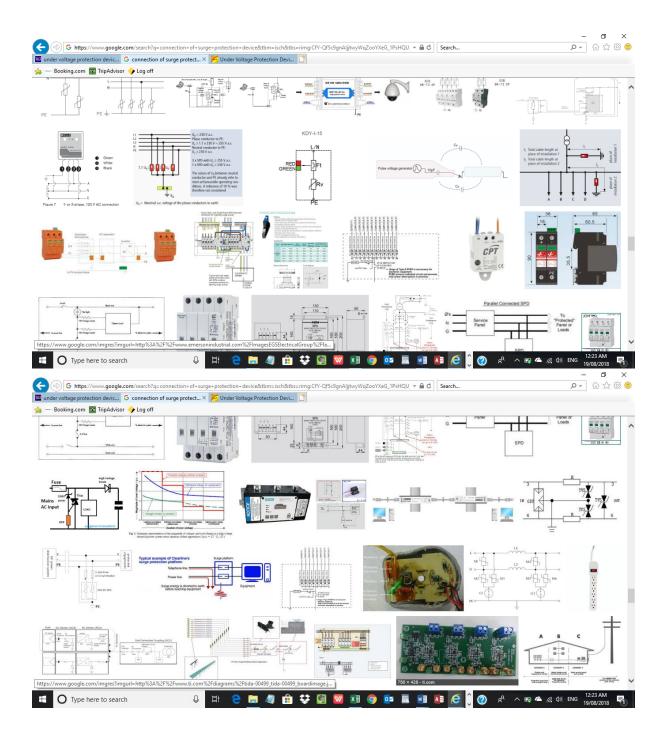


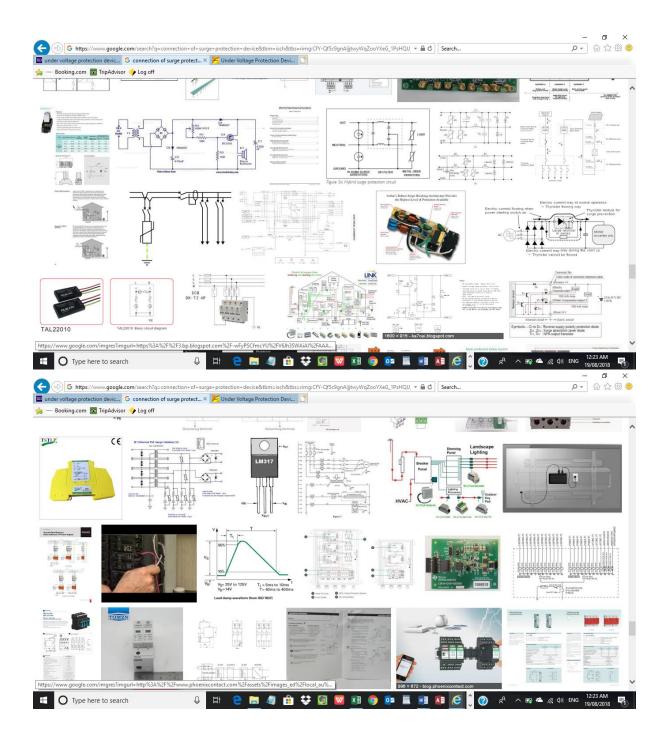


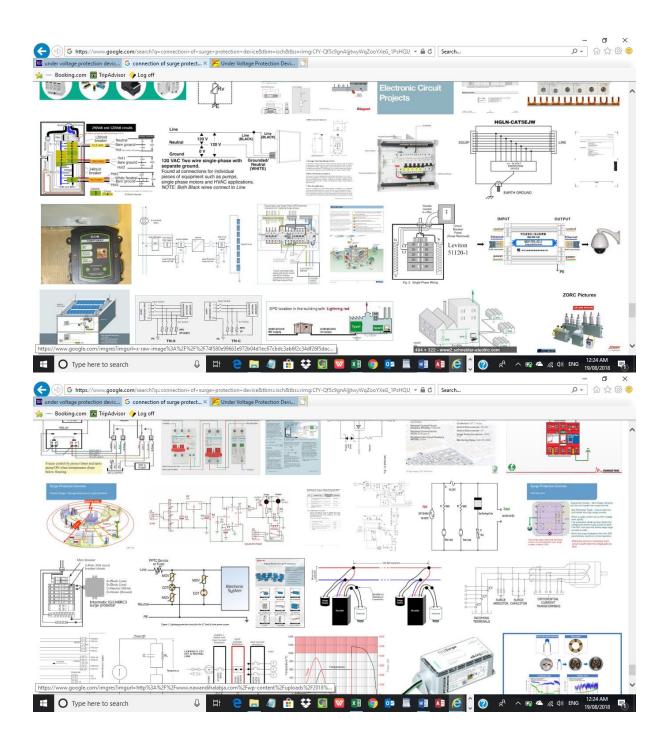




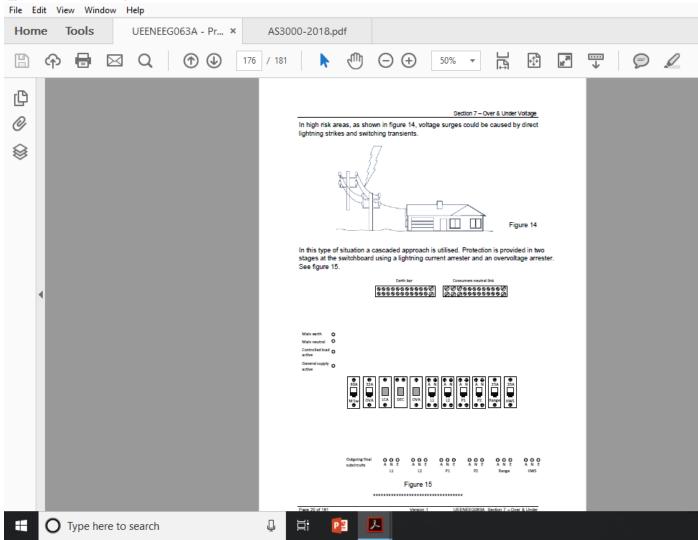








🔁 AS3000-2018.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC File Edit View Window Help	– ø ×
Home Tools UEENEEG063A - Pr AS3000-2018.pdf ×	(?) Sign In
🖺 🗇 🖶 🖂 Q, 🕜 🕘 529 / 614 🖡 🖑 🔾 🤄	
Supply Man switch Supply Meutral bar O MEN connection Earth bar O Earth car	Image: Select PDF File         Image: Select PDF Fi
FIGURE F1 TYPICAL PRIMARY From MEU connection Neutral bar Neutral bar Do yourself DUEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC	Document Language: English (U.S.) Change English (U.S.) Change Convert Convert Convert Try Acrobat Pro DC Greete PDF ✓ Try Acrobat Pro DC Get Started © 2 x <sup>R</sup> ∧ IN & 12:39 AM 19/08/2018
File Edit View Window Help	
Home Tools UEENEEG063A - Pr ×	AS3000-2018.pdf
🖺 🏟 🖶 🖂 Q 🗇 🕑 175	/ 181 🕨 ⊖ 🕂 50% 🕶 🛱 🗗 🐺 🗭 🖉
	Sector 2- Over 8 Under Votage         Figure 13 illustrates the most basic form of protection for low risk areas. A single protection in accordance with AS/NZS 3000:2007 a 32A circuit breaker is to be used for overcurrent protection of the SVD portion of the switchboard.         VIEW       VIEW
	Ongene that OOO OOO OOO OOO OOO OOO OOO OOO sabdruits LI PI LI PI LI PI Banga HWS Figure 13



🗾 UEENEEG063A - Protection.pdf - Adobe Acrobat Reader DC

1.In past versions of Standards, and in trade practice devices for protection against overvoltage have been called 'surge diverters'. What is the internationally recognise d term, and the name given to these devices in AS/NZS 3000:2007?

AS/NZS 3000 reference

1.5.11.3 Voltage disturbances and electromagnetic influences Protection against damage as a consequence of overvoltage, such as that originating from lightning or from switching operations, is not a requirement of this Standard.

NOTE: Clause 2.7 and Appendix F provide guidance on overvoltage (surge) protection.

2.For the purposes of primary protection (formerly called 'coarse or basic protection'), at which point should a SPD be fitted in an installation?

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

F1.1 General

This Appendix provides details on the installation of surge protection devices (SPDs) to provide limitation of transient overvoltages caused by powerline disturbances and by natural events, such as lightning strikes, to or near to exposed conductors, as discussed in Clause 2.7.3.

3.Is it necessary to protect a SPD against the effects of overcurrent, where the device is fitted at a main switchboard?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

#### Yes

F1.2.4 Overcurrent protective devices SPDs should be protected against short-circuit by suitable overcurrent protective devices. In accordance with Clause 2.5.2, the short-circuit withstand of the SPD, together with the overcurrent protective device, should be not less than the prospective short-circuit current at the point of installation.

4.In addition to AS/NZS 3000.2007, which AS/NZS Standard provides guidance on the installation of SPDs in MEN systems?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

F1.2.2 Installation

SPDs should be-

(a) installed after the main switch but prior to any RCD devices. Where the main switch is an RCD, refer to Paragraph F2.4;

(b) protected by an appropriate fuse or circuit-breaker separate from the SPD;

(c) connected at the main switchboard between phase and neutral; NOTE: Figure F1 shows a typical connection of a primary SPD for a single-phase installation.

(d) connected at switchboards remote from the main switchboard and without MEN connection, from each phase to neutral and from neutral to earth;

NOTE: Figure F2 shows a typical installation of a secondary SPD for a single-phase installation.

(e) be legibly and permanently labelled as to their function, in accordance with Clause 2.10.5.1; and

(f) where alarmed to provide status indication, fail safe in operation. AS/NZS 1768 provides further details on the selection of primary and secondary SPDs.

5. Where SPDs are fitted to a switchboard, is labelling required? If so what would be asuitable

label?\_\_\_\_\_

AS/NZS 3000 reference

F1.2.2 Installation

SPDs should be-(a) installed after the main switch but prior to any RCD devices. Where the main switch is an RCD, refer to Paragraph F2.4; (b) protected by an appropriate fuse or circuit-breaker separate from the SPD: (c) connected at the main switchboard between phase and neutral; NOTE: Figure F1 shows a typical connection of a primary SPD for a single-phase installation. (d) connected at switchboards remote from the main switchboard and without MEN connection, from each phase to neutral and from neutral to earth; NOTE: Figure F2 shows a typical installation of a secondary SPD for a single-phase installation. (e) be legibly and permanently labelled as to their function, in accordance with Clause 2, 10, 5, 1; and (f) where alarmed to provide status indication, fail safe in operation. AS/NZS 1768 provides further details on the selection of primary and secondary SPDs.

6.Where a fuse is used to provide overcurrent protection for a 40kA SPD, what type of fuse is required, and what current rating is recommended?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

### F1.2.5 Connecting conductors

Conductors used to connect an SPD to both the line, via the overcurrent protective device, and to the main earthing or neutral conductor should be consistent with the current rating of the backup fuse or circuit-breaker but should be not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>, be as short and direct as possible and with no loops.

The total conductor length between the two points of connection including both active and earth/neutral should be less than 1 m (ideally 300 mm-600 mm) overall.

A connection to the neutral conductor should be as close as practicable to the MEN link.

7.Where a residual current device is used as a main switch, and a SPD is fitted, what is therecommended minimum fault current interrupting capacity of the RCD?

F1.2.4 Overcurrent protective devices

SPDs should be protected against short-circuit by suitable overcurrent protective devices. In accordance with Clause 2.5.2, the short-circuit withstand of the SPD, together with the overcurrent protective device, should be not less than the prospective short-circuit current at the point of installation.

or

The current rating of the SPD overcurrent protective device should be-(a) as recommended by the SPD manufacturer but not greater than the manufacturer's declared maximum backup fuse rating; and (b) less than the rating of the immediate upstream protective device. NOTE: Notwithstanding the above, the following current ratings of HRC fuses or circuit-breakers are suitable for typical domestic applications, such as households: (a) 32 A for a 40 kA SPD.

(b) 63 A for a 100 kA SPD.

If an SPD is installed on the load side of an RCD, the RCD should have a breaking capacity of not less than 3 kA. S-type RCDs, in accordance with AS/NZS 61008.1 and AS/NZS 61009.1 are deemed to satisfy this recommendation.

8.What is the minimum recommended size for cabling used to connect a SPD in a switchboard?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

F1.2.5 Connecting conductors

Conductors used to connect an SPD to both the line, via the overcurrent protective device, and to the main earthing or neutral conductor should be consistent with the current rating of the backup fuse or circuit-breaker but should be not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>, be as short and direct as possible and with no loops.

The total conductor length between the two points of connection including both active and earth/neutral should be less than 1 m (ideally 300 mm-600 mm) overall.

9.Where a circuit breaker is used to provide overcurrent protection for a SPD, what 9.Where a circuit broader a rating is required for a 40kA SPD? \_\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_\_

### F1.2.4 Overcurrent protective devices

(b) less than the rating of the immediate upstream protective device. NOTE: Notwithstanding the above, the following current ratings of HRC fuses or circuit-breakers are suitable for typical domestic applications, such as households:

(a) 32 A for a 40 kA SPD. or (b) 63 A for a 100 kA SPD.

10. What minimum working voltage is recommended for SPDs fitted to a domestic switchboard?

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

F1.2.3 Selection of surge protection devices (SPDs) For most domestic supplies in urban environments, a surge rating of  $I_{max} = 40$  kA per phase for an 8/20  $\cdot$  s impulse and a maximum working voltage of 275 V a.c. to 320 V a.c. is suitable.

11. What is the maximum recommended length for cabling used to connect a SPD in a switchboard?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

F1.2.5 Connecting conductors

Conductors used to connect an SPD to both the line, via the overcurrent protective device, and to the main earthing or neutral conductor should be consistent with the current rating of the backup fuse or circuit-breaker but should be not less than 6 mm<sub>2</sub>, be as short and direct as possible and with no loops.

The total conductor length between the two points of connection including both active and earth/neutral should be less than 1 m (ideally 300 mm-600 mm) overall.

A connection to the neutral conductor should be as close as practicable to the MEN link.

12. In which part of Section 8 of AS/NZS 3000:2007 does it recommend the disconnection of SPD units when insulation resistance testing?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

8.3.10 Operation of RCDs

\* To verify that RCDs have been correctly installed, tests shall be performed on all RCDs.

\* The function of the RCD shall be verified either by the operation of the integral test device, or by the use of special test equipment.

 $\boldsymbol{\ast}$  In all cases, isolation of all switched poles shall be verified after the RCD

has operated to disconnect the designated circuit.

\* Isolation of all poles shall be verified by voltage tests or, after removing supply, by continuity checks through each pole.

13. Where it is impractical to disconnect a SPD during insulation testing, what is the minimum permitted test voltage and insulation resistance?

AS/NZS 3000 reference

8.3.3 Mandatory tests

8.3.3.1 Low voltage

\* Testing shall be carried out on parts of electrical installations designed to operate at low voltage as follows:

(a) Continuity of the earthing system (earth resistance of the main earthing conductor, protective earthing conductors, PEN conductors and bonding conductors), in accordance with Clause 8.3.5. (b) Insulation resistance, in accordance with Clause 8.3.6. (c) Polarity, in accordance with Clause 8.3.7. (d) Correct circuit connections, in accordance with Clause 8.3.8. (e) Verification of impedance required for automatic disconnection of supply (earth fault-loop impedance), in accordance with Clause 8.3.9. (f) Operation of RCDs, in accordance with Clause 8.3.10. 8.3.3.2 Extra-low voltage Testing shall be carried out on parts of electrical installations designed to operate at extra-low voltage as follows: (a) Continuity of the earthing system for PELV circuits in accordance with Clause 8.3.5. (b) Insulation resistance in accordance with Clause 7.5.12. (c) Polarity for PELV circuits in accordance with Clause 8.3.7. (d) Correct circuit connections in accordance with Clause 8.3.8. 8.3.6 Insulation resistance 8.3.6.1 General Insulation resistance testing shall be carried out to ensure that the insulation resistance between all live conductors and earth or, as the case may be, all live parts and earth, is adequate to ensure the integrity of the insulation. This testing is to prevent-(a) electric shock hazards from inadvertent contact; (b) fire hazards from short-circuits; and (c) equipment damage. In addition, an insulation resistance test between conductors is necessary for consumer mains and submains to minimize risk of injury or property damage because of insulation breakdown. 8.3.6.2 Method The integrity of the insulation is stressed by applying a direct current at 500 V for low voltage circuits.

14. Under which conditions is it mandatory to provide under voltage protection?

2.8.1 General

AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

The requirements of Clause 2.8.2 shall apply where an electrical installation is protected against undervoltage that may cause danger to persons or property.

NOTE: The causes of undervoltage in an electrical installation may include the following:

(a) Overload, or conductors of inadequate cross-section, producing excessive voltage drop. (b) A fault in the high voltage supply system. (c) Failure of, or high impedance in, a supply conductor 2.8 PROTECTION AGAINST UNDERVOLTAGE 2.8.1 General Suitable protective measures shall be taken where-(a) the loss and subsequent restoration of voltage; or (b) a drop in voltage. could cause danger to persons or property. NOTE: The causes of undervoltage in an electrical installation may include the following: (a) Overload, or conductors of inadequate cross-section, producing excessive voltage drop. (b) A fault in the high voltage supply system. (c) Failure of, or high impedance in, a supply conductor.

15. Is under voltage protection required for machines such as guillotines, lathes, gates etc,where an unexpected reconnection of supply would cause danger to persons or property?

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

#### No

2.8.1 General

Exception: Where potential damage to electrical equipment is considered an acceptable risk, undervoltage protection may be omitted. NOTES: 1 Examples where the loss and subsequent restoration of voltage might cause danger include unexpected restarting of equipment, such as a guillotine, press or electrically operated gates. See also Clause 4.13 regarding protection of motors.

2 Failure to provide sufficient voltage will significantly reduce motor torque and will result either in an excessively long starting time or, for extreme cases, in failure to start.

16. Name two devices that are identified in AS/NZS 3000:2007 as being considered suitable for protection against under voltage.

\_\_\_\_\_ AS/NZS 3000 reference \_\_\_\_\_

2.8.2 Selection of protective device

The characteristics of the undervoltage protective device shall be compatible with the requirements of the appropriate Standards for starting and the use of electrical equipment. Where the re-closure of a protective device is likely to create a dangerous situation, the re-closure shall not be automatic. Instantaneous disconnection by the undervoltage device shall not be impaired by contacts that have intentional delays in their operation. Exception: The operation of undervoltage protective devices may be delayed if the operation of the protected electrical equipment allows a brief interruption or loss of voltage without danger. NOTES: 1 Protective devices having time-delay facilities should permit the starting of

motors where the supply voltage exceeds 85% of rated voltage and continued operation where the voltage is within 10% of the rated voltage. 2 Examples of protective devices for undervoltage are-

(a) undervoltage relays or releases operating a switch or a circuit-breaker; and

(b) non-latched contactors.

17.Would it be acceptable to have automatic restarting of a refrigerator motor, when supply returned to normal after an under voltage problem had caused stopping of the motor?

\_\_\_\_\_ reference not required

Yes

18.Would it be acceptable to have automatic restarting of a large fan motor, wholly enclosed within a ventilation duct that is large enough to allow person access, when supply returned to normal after an under voltage problem had caused stopping of the motor?

reference not required

No